



LOVATO ELECTRIC S.P.A.

24020 GORLE (BERGAMO) ITALIA  
VIA DON E. MAZZA, 12  
TEL.: 035 4282111  
TELEFAX (Nazionale): 035 4282200  
TELEFAX (Intern.): +39 035 4282400  
E-mail info@LovatoElectric.com  
Web www.LovatoElectric.com

1285GB 09 09

# Industrial Inverter

(For 3-phase induction motors)

## Instruction Manual

# TOSVERT™ VF-nC3

<Detailed manual>

|                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1-phase 120V class | 0.1 to 0.75kW |
| 1-phase 240V class | 0.1 to 2.2kW  |
| 3-phase 240V class | 0.1 to 4kW    |

### NOTICE

1. Make sure that this instruction manual is delivered to the end user of the inverter unit.
2. Read this manual before installing or operating the inverter unit, and store it in a safe place for reference.



E6581595

|                                   |    |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| Safety precautions                | I  |
| Introduction                      | II |
| Contents                          |    |
| Read first                        | 1  |
| Connection                        | 2  |
| Operations                        | 3  |
| Setting parameters                | 4  |
| Main parameters                   | 5  |
| Other parameters                  | 6  |
| Operation with external signal    | 7  |
| Monitoring the operation status   | 8  |
| Measures to satisfy the standards | 9  |
| Peripheral devices                | 10 |
| Table of parameters and data      | 11 |
| Specifications                    | 12 |
| Before making a service call      | 13 |
| Inspection and maintenance        | 14 |
| Warranty                          | 15 |
| Disposal of the inverter          | 16 |

# I. Safety precautions

The items described in these instructions and on the inverter itself are very important so that you can use the inverter safely, prevent injury to yourself and other people around you as well as to prevent damage to property in the area. Thoroughly familiarize yourself with the symbols and indications shown below and then continue to read the manual. Make sure that you observe all warnings given.




## Explanation of markings

| Marking  | Meaning of marking  |
|--|---|
|  <b>Warning</b> | Indicates that errors in operation may lead to death or serious injury.   |
|  <b>Caution</b> | Indicates that errors in operation may lead to injury (*1) to people or that these errors may cause damage to physical property. (*2) |

(\*1) Such things as injury, burns or shock that will not require hospitalization or long periods of outpatient treatment.

(\*2) Physical property damage refers to wide-ranging damage to assets and materials.

## Meanings of symbols

| Marking   | Meaning of marking  |
|---|---|
|  | Indicates prohibition (Don't do it).<br>What is prohibited will be described in or near the symbol in either text or picture form.  |
|  | Indicates an instruction that must be followed.<br>Detailed instructions are described in illustrations and text in or near the symbol.   |
|  | -Indicates warning.<br>What is warned will be described in or near the symbol in either text or picture form.<br>-Indicates caution.<br>What the caution should be applied to will be described in or near the symbol in either text or picture form. |

## ■ Limits in purpose

This inverter is used for controlling speeds of three-phase induction motors in general industrial use.







Single-phase power input is output by the inverter as 3-phase output and cannot drive a single-phase motor.





### Safety precautions



- ▼ The inverter cannot be used in any device that would present danger to the human body or from which malfunction or error in operation would present a direct threat to human life (nuclear power control device, aviation and space flight control device, traffic device, life support or operation system, safety device, etc.). If the inverter is to be used for any special purpose, first get in touch with the supplier.
- ▼ This product was manufactured under the strictest quality controls but if it is to be used in critical equipment, for example, equipment in which errors in malfunctioning signal output system would cause a major accident, safety devices must be installed on the equipment.
- ▼ Do not use the inverter for loads other than those of properly applied three-phase induction motors in general industrial use. (Use in other than properly applied three-phase induction motors may cause an accident.)




## ■ General Operation

|  <b>Warning</b>               |   | See item              |
|--|---|-----------------------|
| <br>Disassembly<br>prohibited | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Never disassemble, modify or repair.<br/>This can result in electric shock, fire and injury. For repairs, call your sales distributor.</li> </ul>  | 2.                    |
| <br>Prohibited                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not open the terminal block cover while the inverter is on.<br/>The unit contains many high voltage parts and contact with them will result in electric shock.</li> <li>Don't stick your fingers into openings such as cable wiring hole and cooling fan covers.<br/>This can result in electric shock or other injury.</li> <li>Don't place or insert any kind of object into the inverter (electrical wire cuttings, rods, wires etc.).<br/>This can result in electric shock or fire.</li> <li>Do not allow water or any other fluid to come in contact with the inverter.<br/>This can result in electric shock or fire.</li> </ul>   | 2.1<br>2.<br>2.<br>2. |
| <br>Instruction               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After replacing the terminal block cover, turn the input power on.<br/>Turning on the input power without replacing the terminal block cover may lead to electric shock.</li> <li>If the inverter begins to emit smoke or an unusual odor, or unusual sounds, immediately turn power off.<br/>If the equipment is continued in operation in such a state, the result may be fire. Call your local sales agency for repairs.</li> <li>Always turn power off if the inverter is not used for long periods of time since there is a possibility of malfunction caused by leaks, dust and other material. If power is left on with the inverter in that state, it may result in fire.</li> </ul> | 2.1<br>3.<br>3.       |
|  <b>Caution</b>               |   | See item              |
| <br>Prohibited<br>contact     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not touch heat radiating fins or discharge resistors.<br/>These device are hot, and you'll get burned if you touch them.</li> </ul>   | 3.                    |



■ Transportation & installation




|  <b>Warning</b> |   | See item |
|--|---|----------|
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not install or operate the inverter if it is damaged or any component is missing. This can result in electric shock or fire. Please consult your local sales agency for repairs. Call your local sales agency for repairs.</li> </ul> | 1.4.4    |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not place any inflammable objects nearby. If a flame is emitted due to malfunction, it may result in a fire.</li> </ul>   | 1.4.4    |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not install in any location where the inverter could come into contact with water or other fluids. This can result in electric shock or fire.</li> </ul>  | 2.       |



|  <b>Warning</b> |  | See item |
|--|--|----------|
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Must be used in the environmental conditions prescribed in the instruction manual. Use under any other conditions may result in malfunction.</li> </ul>   | 1.4.4    |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mount the inverter on a metal plate. The rear panel gets very hot. Do not install in an inflammable object, this can result in fire.</li> </ul>   | 1.4.4    |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not use the inverter without the terminal block cover. This can result in electric shock. Failure to do so can lead to risk of electric shock and can result in death or serious injury.</li> </ul>  | 1.4.4    |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An emergency stop device must be installed that fits with system specifications (e.g. shut off input power then engage mechanical brake). Operation cannot be stopped immediately by the inverter alone, thus risking an accident or injury.</li> </ul> | 1.4.4    |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All options used must be those specified by Toshiba. The use of any other option may result in an accident.</li> </ul>  | 1.4.4    |



|  <b>Caution</b> |   | See item |
|--|---|----------|
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When transporting or carrying, do not hold by the front panel covers. The covers may come off and the unit will drop out resulting in injury.</li> </ul>   | 2.       |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not install in any area where the unit would be subject to large amounts of vibration. That could result in the unit falling, resulting in injury.</li> </ul>   | 1.4.4    |
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The main unit must be installed on a base that can bear the unit's weight. If the unit is installed on a base that cannot withstand that weight, the unit may fall resulting in injury.</li> </ul>       | 1.4.4    |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If braking is necessary (to hold motor shaft), install a mechanical brake. The brake on the inverter will not function as a mechanical hold, and if used for that purpose, injury may result.</li> </ul> | 1.4.4    |

## ■ Wiring



|  <b>Warning</b> |   | See item          |
|--|---|-------------------|
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not connect input power to the output (motor side) terminals (U/T1,V/T2,W/T3). That will destroy the inverter and may result in fire.</li> <li>• Do not connect resistors to the DC terminals (across PA/+ - PC/- or PO-PC/-). That may cause a fire.</li> <li>• Within 15 minutes after turning off input power, do not touch wires of devices (MCCB) connected to the input side of the inverter. That could result in electric shock.</li> <li>• When supplying power from a wall socket, do not exceed the rated capacity of the socket. Otherwise, this may generate excessive heat which can start a fire.</li> </ul> | 2.2<br>2.2<br>2.2 |




|  <b>Warning</b> |   | See item                                 |
|--|---|--|
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Electrical installation work must be done by a qualified expert. Connection of input power by someone who does not have that expert knowledge may result in fire or electric shock.</li> <li>• Connect output terminals (motor side) correctly. If the phase sequence is incorrect, the motor will operate in reverse and that may result in injury.</li> <li>• Wiring must be done after installation. If wiring is done prior to installation that may result in injury or electric shock</li> <li>• The following steps must be performed before wiring.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Turn off all input power.</li> <li>(2) Wait at least 15 minutes and check to make sure that the charge lamp is no longer lit.</li> <li>(3) Use a tester that can measure DC voltage (400VDC or more), and check to make sure that the voltage to the DC main circuits (across PA/+ - PC/-) is 45V or less. If these steps are not properly performed, the wiring will cause electric shock.</li> </ol> </li> <li>• Tighten the screws on the terminal board to specified torque. If the screws are not tightened to the specified torque, it may lead to fire.</li> <li>• Check to make sure that the input power voltage is +10%, -15% of the rated power voltage written on the rating label (<math>\pm 10\%</math> when the load is 100% in continuous operation). If the input power voltage is not +10%, -15% of the rated power voltage (<math>\pm 10\%</math> when the load is 100% in continuous operation) this may result in fire.</li> </ul> | 2.1<br>2.1<br>2.1<br>2.1<br>2.1<br>1.4.4 |
| <br>Be Grounded | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ground must be connected securely. If the ground is not securely connected, it could lead to electric shock or fire when a malfunction or current leak occurs.</li> </ul>  | 2.1<br>2.2                               |



|  <b>Caution</b> |   | See item |
|--|---|----------|
| <br>Prohibited | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not attach equipment (such as noise filters or surge absorbers) that have built-in capacitors to the output (motor side) terminals. That could result in a fire.</li> </ul> | 2.1      |

|  |   |          |
|--|---|----------|
|  <b>Warning</b>  |   | See item |
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configuring settings on the setup menu incorrectly may break the inverter or lead to malfunction.</li> </ul> | 3.1      |



**■ Operations**

|  |  |          |
|--|--|----------|
|  <b>Warning</b> |  | See item |
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Never touch the internal terminals in the upper right while the front cover is open. There is a risk of shock because it carries a high voltage.</li> </ul> | 1.3.1    |

|  |   |                |
|--|---|----------------|
|  <b>Warning</b> |   | See item       |
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not touch inverter terminals when electrical power is going to the inverter even if the motor is stopped. Touching the inverter terminals while power is connected to it may result in electric shock.</li> <li>Do not touch switches when the hands are wet and do not try to clean the inverter with a damp cloth. Such practices may result in electric shock.</li> <li>Do not go near the motor in alarm-stop status when the retry function is selected. The motor may suddenly restart and that could result in injury. Take measures for safety, e.g. attaching a cover to the motor, against accidents when the motor unexpectedly restarts.</li> </ul> | 3.<br>3.<br>3. |
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After replacing the terminal block cover, turn the input power on. When installed inside a cabinet and using with the front cover removed, always close the cabinet doors first and then turn power on. Turning on the power with the terminal block cover or cabinet doors open may result in electric shock.</li> <li>Make sure that operation signals are off before resetting the inverter after malfunction. If the inverter is reset before turning off the operating signal, the motor may restart suddenly causing injury.</li> </ul>  | 3.<br>3.       |



|  |  |          |
|--|--|----------|
|  <b>Caution</b> |  | See item |
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Observe all permissible operating ranges of motors and mechanical equipment. (Refer to the motor's instruction manual.) Not observing these ranges may result in injury.</li> </ul> | 3.       |

**■ When sequence for restart after a momentary failure is selected (inverter)**




|  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
|  <b>Caution</b> |   | See item                                   |
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stand clear of motors and mechanical equipment. If the motor stops due to a momentary power failure, the equipment will start suddenly after power recovers. This could result in unexpected injury.</li> <li>Attach warnings about sudden restart after a momentary power failure on inverters, motors and equipment for prevention of accidents in advance.</li> </ul> | E6581595,<br>6.12.1<br>E6581595,<br>6.12.1 |

**I**



■ When retry function is selected (inverter)

|  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
|  <b>Caution</b> |   | See item                                       |
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stand clear of motors and equipment. If the motor and equipment stop when the alarm is given, selection of the retry function will restart them suddenly after the specified time has elapsed. This could result in unexpected injury.</li> <li>Attach warnings about sudden restart in retry function on inverters, motors and equipment for prevention of accidents in advance.</li> </ul> | E6581595,<br>6.12.3<br><br>E6581595,<br>6.12.3 |

■ Maintenance and inspection

|  |  |                |
|--|--|----------------|
|  <b>Warning</b> |  | See item       |
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not replace parts. This could be a cause of electric shock, fire and bodily injury. To replace parts, call the local sales agency.</li> </ul>  | 14.2           |
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The equipment must be inspected every day. If the equipment is not inspected and maintained, errors and malfunctions may not be discovered and that could result in accidents.</li> <li>Before inspection, perform the following steps.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn off all input power to the inverter.</li> <li>Wait at least 15 minutes and check to make sure that the charge lamp is no longer lit.</li> <li>Use a tester that can measure DC voltages (400VDC or more), and check to make sure that the voltage to the DC main circuits (across PA/+ - PC/-) is 45V or less.</li> </ol>                             If inspection is performed without performing these steps first, it could lead to electric shock.                         </li> </ul> | 14.<br><br>14. |

■ Disposal


|  |   |          |
|--|---|----------|
|  <b>Caution</b> |   | See item |
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you throw away the inverter, have it done by a specialist in industry waste disposal(*). If you throw away the inverter by yourself, this can result in explosion of capacitor or produce noxious gases, resulting in injury.</li> </ul> <p>(* ) Persons who specialize in the processing of waste and known as "industrial waste product collectors and transporters" or "industrial waste disposal persons." If the collection, transport and disposal of industrial waste is done by someone who is not licensed for that job, it is a punishable violation of the law. (Laws in regard to cleaning and processing of waste materials)</p> | 16.      |

## ■ Attach caution labels


Shown here are examples of warning labels to prevent, in advance, accidents in relation to inverters, motors and other equipment.

Be sure to affix the caution label where it is easily visible when selecting the auto-restart function (6.13.1) or the retry function (6.13.3).

If the inverter has been programmed for restart sequence of momentary power failure, place warning labels in a place where they can be easily seen and read.  
(Example of warning label)

|  |   |
|--|---|
|   | <b>Caution (Functions programmed for restart)</b> |
| Do not go near motors and equipment.<br>Motors and equipment that have stopped temporarily after momentary power failure will restart suddenly after recovery. |   |

If the retry function has been selected, place warning labels in a location where they can be easily seen and read.  
(Example of warning label)

|   |   |
|---|---|
|    | <b>Caution (Functions programmed for retry)</b> |
| Do not go near motors and equipment.<br>Motors and equipment that have stopped temporarily after an alarm will restart suddenly after the specified time has elapsed. |   |



## II. Introduction

---

---

Thank you for your purchase of the Toshiba "TOSVERT VF-nC3" industrial inverter.

This is the Ver. 100 CPU version inverter.

Please be informed that CPU version will be frequently upgraded.

## — Contents —

|      |   |      |
|------|---|------|
| I    | Safety precautions .....  | 1    |
| II   | Introduction .....  | 8    |
| 1.   | Read first .....  | A-1  |
| 1.1  | Check product purchase .....  | A-1  |
| 1.2  | Contents of the product .....   | A-2  |
| 1.3  | Names and functions .....   | A-3  |
| 1.4  | Notes on the application .....  | A-12 |
| 2.   | Connection .....  | B-1  |
| 2.1  | Cautions on wiring .....  | B-1  |
| 2.2  | Standard connections .....  | B-2  |
| 2.3  | Description of terminals .....  | B-5  |
| 3.   | Operations .....  | C-1  |
| 3.1  | How to Set the Setup Menu .....   | C-2  |
| 3.2  | Simplified Operation of the VF-nC3 .....  | C-4  |
| 3.3  | How to operate the VF-nC3 .....   | C-9  |
| 3.4  | Meter setting and adjustment .....  | C-13 |
| 3.5  | Setting the electronic thermal .....  | C-16 |
| 3.6  | Preset-speed operation (speeds in 15 steps) .....                                   | C-21 |
| 4.   | Setting parameters .....  | D-1  |
| 4.1  | Setting and Display Modes .....   | D-1  |
| 4.2  | How to set parameters .....   | D-3  |
| 4.3  | Functions useful in searching for a parameter or changing a parameter setting ..... | D-7  |
| 4.4  | Checking the region settings selection .....  | D-12 |
| 4.5  | EASY key function .....   | D-13 |
| 5.   | Main parameters .....   | E-1  |
| 5.1  | Searching for changes using the history function ( <i>RUH</i> ) .....               | E-1  |
| 5.2  | Setting a parameter using the guidance function ( <i>RUF</i> ) .....                | E-2  |
| 5.3  | Setting acceleration/deceleration time .....  | E-5  |
| 5.4  | Increasing starting torque .....  | E-7  |
| 5.5  | Selection of operation mode .....   | E-10 |
| 5.6  | Meter setting and adjustment .....  | E-13 |
| 5.7  | Forward/reverse run selection (Panel keypad) .....                                  | E-13 |
| 5.8  | Maximum frequency .....   | E-14 |
| 5.9  | Upper limit and lower limit frequencies .....                                       | E-15 |
| 5.10 | Base frequency .....  | E-16 |

|      |   |      |
|------|---|------|
| 5.11 | Selecting control mode.....   | E-17 |
| 5.12 | Manual torque boost - increasing torque boost at low speeds .....             | E-21 |
| 5.13 | Setting the electronic thermal .....  | E-22 |
| 5.14 | Preset-speed operation (speeds in 15 steps).....                              | E-22 |
| 5.15 | Standard default setting .....  | E-22 |
| 5.16 | Checking the region setting selection .....                                   | E-22 |
| 5.17 | EASY key function .....   | E-22 |
| 6.   | Other parameters .....  | F-1  |
| 6.1  | Input/output parameters .....   | F-1  |
| 6.2  | Input signal selection.....   | F-4  |
| 6.3  | Terminal function selection.....  | F-7  |
| 6.4  | Basic parameters 2 .....  | F-9  |
| 6.5  | Setting frequency command .....   | F-11 |
| 6.6  | Operation frequency.....  | F-18 |
| 6.7  | DC braking.....   | F-19 |
| 6.8  | Auto-stop in case of lower-limit frequency continuous operation .....         | F-20 |
| 6.9  | Jump frequency - Avoiding frequency resonance.....                            | F-21 |
| 6.10 | Preset-speed operation frequencies .....                                      | F-22 |
| 6.11 | PWM carrier frequency .....   | F-22 |
| 6.12 | Trip-less intensification.....  | F-24 |
| 6.13 | PID control .....   | F-32 |
| 6.14 | Setting motor constants.....  | F-37 |
| 6.15 | 2nd acceleration/deceleration .....   | F-41 |
| 6.16 | Protection functions.....   | F-45 |
| 6.17 | Adjustment parameters .....   | F-55 |
| 6.18 | Operation panel parameter .....   | F-57 |
| 6.19 | Communication function (RS485) .....  | F-63 |
| 6.20 | Free memo.....  | F-68 |
| 7.   | Operations with external signal.....  | G-1  |
| 7.1  | Operating externally signals.....   | G-1  |
| 7.2  | Applied operations by an I/O signal (operation from the terminal block) ..... | G-2  |
| 7.3  | Speed instruction (analog signal) settings from external devices.....         | G-10 |
| 8.   | Monitoring the operation status.....  | H-1  |
| 8.1  | Flow of status monitor mode .....   | H-1  |
| 8.2  | Status monitor mode .....   | H-2  |
| 8.3  | Display of trip information.....  | H-6  |
| 9.   | Measures to satisfy the standards.....  | I-1  |
| 9.1  | How to cope with the CE directive.....  | I-1  |
| 9.2  | Compliance with UL Standard and CSA Standard.....                             | I-4  |

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 10. Peripheral devices .....  | J-1  |
| 10.1 Selection of wiring materials and devices .....                    | J-1  |
| 10.2 Installation of a magnetic contactor .....                         | J-3  |
| 10.3 Installation of an overload relay .....                            | J-4  |
| 10.4 Optional external devices .....                                    | J-5  |
| 11. Table of parameters and data .....                                  | K-1  |
| 11.1 User parameters .....  | K-1  |
| 11.2 Basic parameters .....   | K-1  |
| 11.3 Extended parameters .....  | K-4  |
| 11.4 Default settings by inverter rating .....                          | K-16 |
| 11.5 Default settings by setup menu .....                               | K-16 |
| 11.6 Input Terminal Function .....                                      | K-17 |
| 11.7 Output Terminal Function .....                                     | K-19 |
| 12. Specifications .....  | L-1  |
| 12.1 Models and their standard specifications .....                     | L-1  |
| 12.2 Outside dimensions and mass .....                                  | L-4  |
| 13. Before making a service call - Trip information and remedies .....  | M-1  |
| 13.1 Trip causes/warnings and remedies .....                            | M-1  |
| 13.2 Restoring the inverter from a trip .....                           | M-5  |
| 13.3 If the motor does not run while no trip message is displayed ..... | M-6  |
| 13.4 How to determine the causes of other problems .....                | M-7  |
| 14. Inspection and maintenance .....                                    | N-1  |
| 14.1 Regular inspection .....   | N-1  |
| 14.2 Periodical inspection .....  | N-2  |
| 14.3 Making a call for servicing .....                                  | N-4  |
| 14.4 Keeping the inverter in storage .....                              | N-4  |
| 15. Warranty .....  | O-1  |
| 16. Disposal of the inverter .....                                      | P-1  |

# 1. Read first

## 1.1 Check product purchase

Before using the product you have purchased, check to make sure that it is exactly what you ordered.


|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <b>⚠ Caution</b>      |  |
| <b>!</b><br>Mandatory | Use an inverter that conforms to the specifications of power supply and three-phase induction motor being used. If the inverter being used does not conform to those specifications, not only will the three-phase induction motor not rotate correctly, it may also cause serious accidents through overheating and fire. |

1

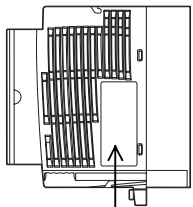
**Rating label**

Brand name  
Model  
Power supply  
Motor capacity

**Inverter main unit**



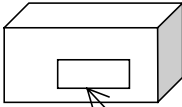
**Danger label**



**Name plate**

**TOSHIBA VF-nC3**  
3PH-200V 0.75kW

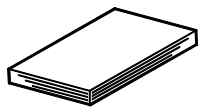
**Carton box**



**Type indication label**

**Instruction manual**

This manual




**Name plate**

Inverter Type  
Inverter rated output capacity  
Power supply  
Related input current  
Related output current

**CD-ROM**

Contains the instruction manual in digital form




**TOSHIBA**  
TRANSISTOR INVERTER  
**VFNC3S-2022PL**

2.2kW-4.1kVA-3HP (1)

| INPUT                      |             | OUTPUT      |  |
|----------------------------|-------------|-------------|--|
| (V)                        | 1PH 200/240 | 3PH 200/240 |  |
| FUSE                       | 50/60       | 0.1/400     |  |
| IP                         | 21-3P18     | 10.0        |  |
| S-CH-1000A FUSE CCU 30Amax |             |             |  |

Serial No. 1328 02021208 0001  
Made in -----

Motor Overload Protection Class 10

CEA-B44.1/ABSE-A17.8

UL LISTED 170M IND. CONTEQ. E204788

TOSHIBA INDUSTRIAL PRODUCTS SALES CO. TSUJ

**Danger label**



**警告**  
危険、火災の恐れがあります。  
必ず取扱説明書をお読みください。  
必ず取扱説明書に従って取組んでください。  
必ず取扱説明書をお読みください。  
必ず取扱説明書に従って取組んでください。

**⚠ DANGER**  
Risk of injury, electric shock or fire.  
Read the instruction manual.  
Do not open the cover until power is stopped  
or for 15 minutes after power has been removed.  
Ground power with connection.

**Setup sheet**



Please set correctly after power on. (必ず正しく設定してください。電源投入後、必ず正しく設定してください。)

**WARNING**  
If operation is not performed correctly, the inverter may be damaged or a fire may occur. Be sure to read the instruction manual carefully before starting operation.

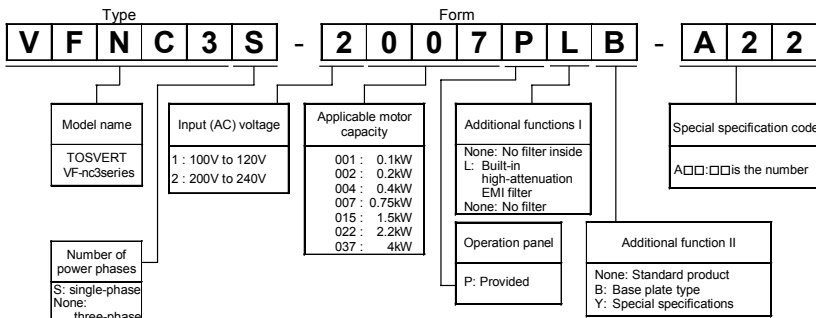
|        |     |        |     |
|--------|-----|--------|-----|
| 電圧 (V) | 1.5 | 電圧 (V) | 1.5 |
| 電流 (A) | 0.1 | 電流 (A) | 0.1 |
| 電圧 (V) | 1.5 | 電流 (A) | 0.1 |
| 電流 (A) | 0.1 | 電流 (A) | 0.1 |

Power the wiring and  
grounding correctly.

必ず取扱説明書をお読みください。  
必ず取扱説明書に従って取組んでください。

## 1.2 Contents of the product

Explanation of the name plate label.

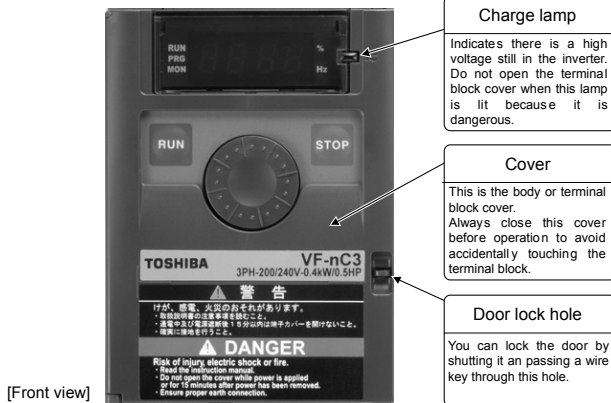


Warning: Always shut power off first then check the ratings label of inverter held in a cabinet.

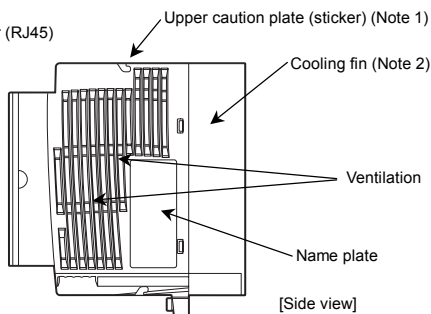
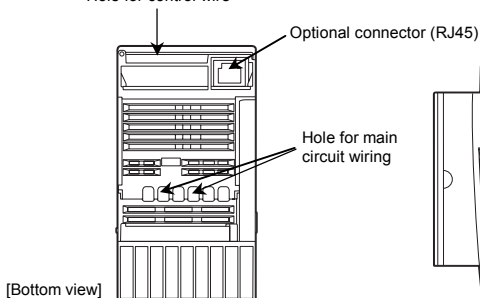
## 1.3 Names and functions

### 1.3.1 Outside view

With cover closed



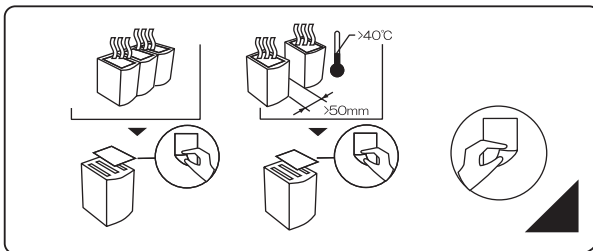
Hole for control wire



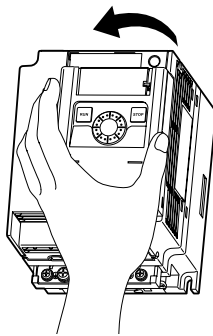
Note 1) Remove the seal as shown on the next page when installing the inverter side by side with other inverters where the ambient temperature will rise above 40°C.

Note 2) Some models are wrapped in plastic.

Example of the label



[Opening the cover]



★About the monitor display

The LED on the operation panel uses the following symbols to indicate parameters and operations.


LED display (numbers)

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |   |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|---|
| 0  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | - |
| 0̄ | 1̄ | 2̄ | 3̄ | 4̄ | 5̄ | 6̄ | 7̄ | 8̄ | 9̄ | - |

LED display (letters)

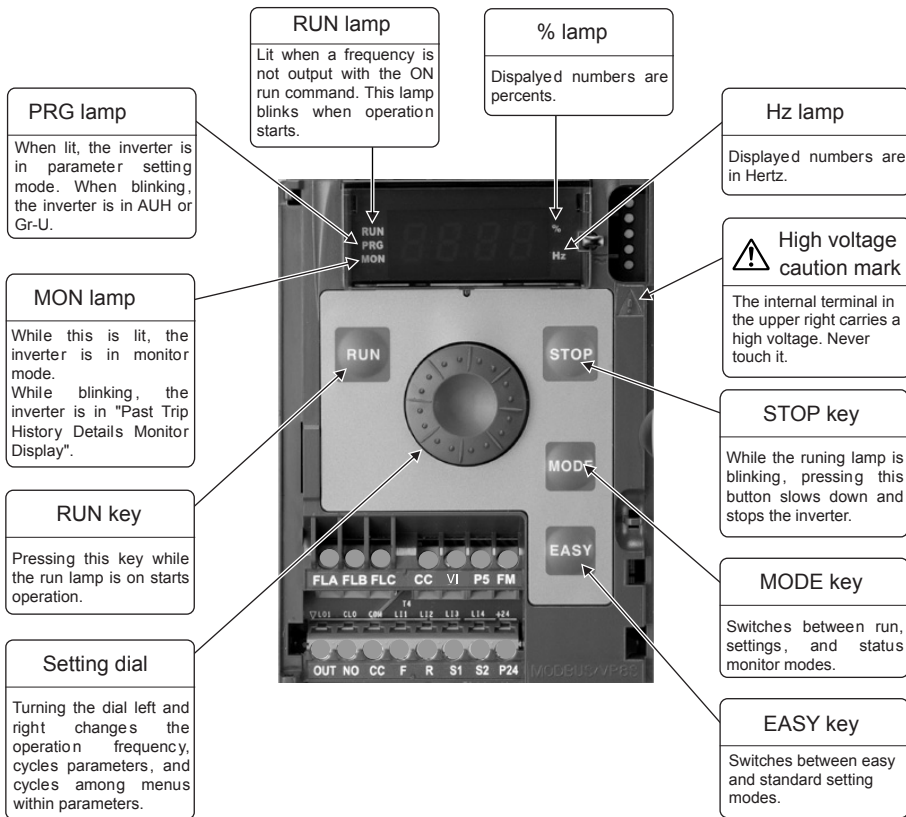
|      |      |    |    |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|----|----|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Aa   | Bb   | C  | c  | Dd   | Ee   | Ff   | Gg   | H    | h    | I    | i    | Jj   | Kk   | Ll   |
| Āā | B̄b̄ | C̄ | c̄ | D̄d̄ | Ēē | F̄f̄ | Ḡḡ | H̄   | h̄   | Ī   | ī   | J̄j̄ | K̄k̄ | L̄l̄ |
| Mm   | Nn   | O  | o  | Pp   | Qq   | Rr   | Ss   | Tt   | Uu   | Vv   | Ww   | Xx   | Yy   | Zz   |
| M̄m̄ | N̄n̄ | Ō | ō | P̄p̄ | Q̄q̄ | R̄r̄ | S̄s̄ | T̄t̄ | Ūū | V̄v̄ | W̄w̄ | X̄x̄ | Ȳȳ | Z̄z̄ |



|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>⚠ Warning</b>  |  |
| <br>Prohibited | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Never touch the internal terminals in the upper right while the cover is open. There is a risk of shock because it carries a high voltage.</li> </ul> |

[With cover open]

1



## 1.3.2 Opening the terminal cover

### ⚠ Caution



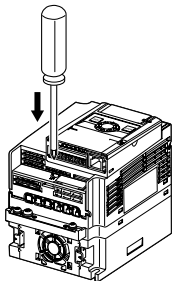
Instruction

- When removing and installing the terminal cover with a screwdriver, be sure not to scratch your hand as this results in injury.
- Pressing too hard on the screwdriver may scratch the inverter.
- Always cut the power supply when removing the wiring cover.
- After wiring is complete, be sure to replace the terminal cover.

Use the following procedure to remove both the upper and lower terminal block covers.

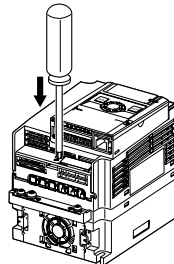
(1) Removing the lower (output and dc terminals) terminal block cover

1)



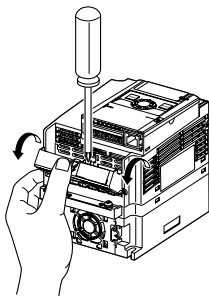
Insert a screwdriver or other thin object into the hole indicated with the ◁ mark.

2)



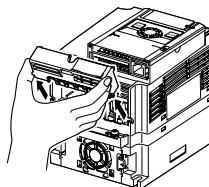
Press in on the screwdriver.

3)



While pressing on the screwdriver, rotate the terminal cover downward to remove it.

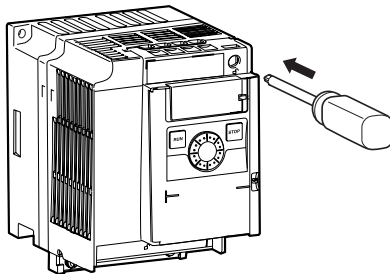
4)



Pull the terminal cover up at an angle.

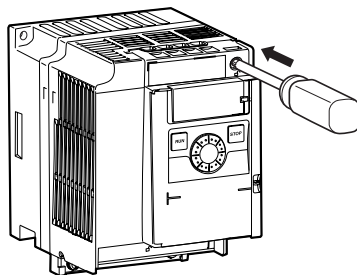
(2) Removing the upper terminal (input terminal) block cover

1)



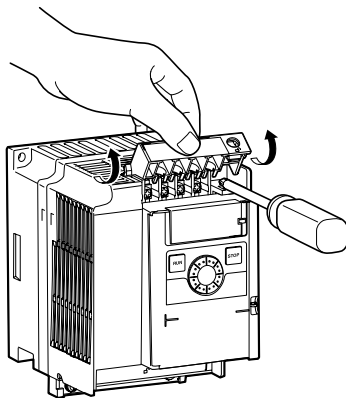
Insert a screwdriver or other thin object into the hole indicated with the □ mark.

2)



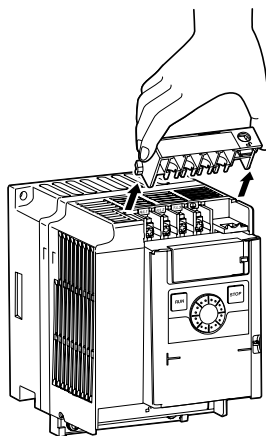
Press in on the screwdriver.

3)



While pressing on the screwdriver, rotate the terminal cover upward to remove it.

4)



Pull the terminal cover up at an angle.

★ After wiring is complete, be sure to restore the terminal cover to its original position.

1

## 1.3.3 Power circuit and control circuit terminal boards

In case of the lug connector, cover the lug connector with insulated tube, or use the insulated lug connector.

Note 1: EMC plate is supplied as standard.

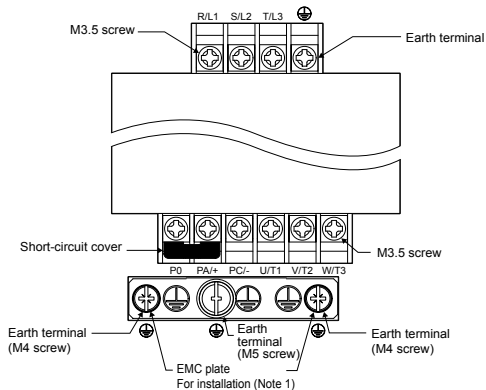
### 1) Power circuit terminal board

In case of the lug connector, cover the lug connector with insulated tube, or use the insulated lug connector.

| Screw size | Tightening torque |             |
|------------|-------------------|-------------|
| M3.5 screw | 1.0Nm             | 8.9lb • in  |
| M4 screw   | 1.4Nm             | 12.4lb • in |
| M5 screw   | 3.0Nm             | 26.6lb • in |

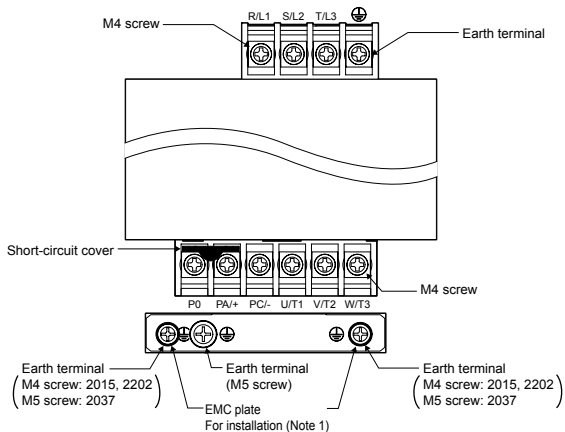
For details on terminal functions, see 2.3.1.

VFNC3-2001 ~ 2007P



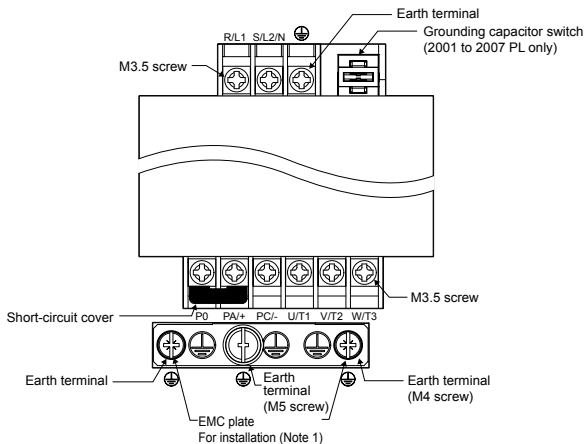
\* Bend the clips on the wiring port of the terminal cover to connect the PO, PA/+, and PC/- terminals.

VFNC3-2015 ~ 2037P



\* Bend the clips on the wiring port of the terminal cover to connect the PO, PA+, and PC- terminals.

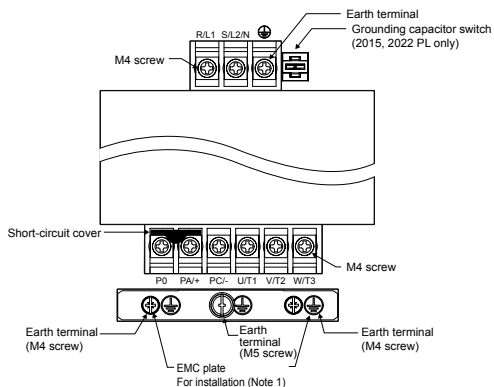
VFNC3S-1001 ~ 1004P, 2001 ~ 2007PL



\* Bend the clips on the wiring port of the terminal cover to connect the PO, PA+, and PC- terminals.

1

VFNC3S-1007P, 2015PL, 2022PL



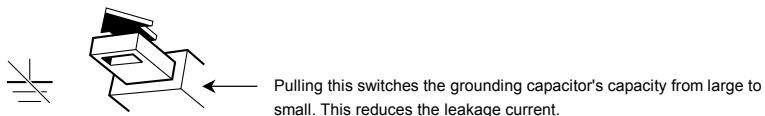
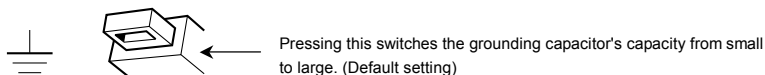
\* Bend the clips on the wiring port of the terminal cover to connect the PO, PA/+, and PC/- terminals.

When using a crimping terminal, be sure to cover the fastener with an insulating tube or use an insulated crimping terminal.

Note 1) The EMC plate is optional.

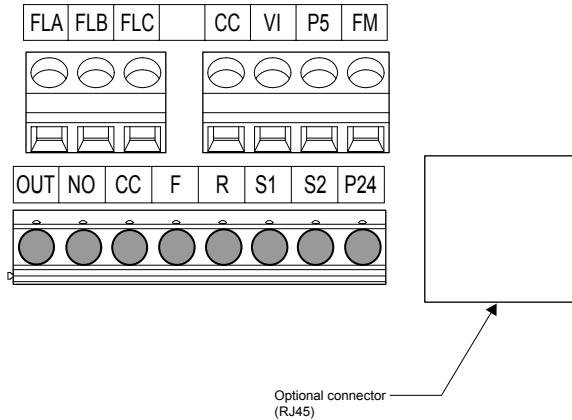
## 2) Grounding capacitor switch

Single-phase 240 V models have a built-in high-attenuation noise filter and are grounded via a capacitor. A switch makes for easy switching to reduce leakage current from the inverter and the load on the capacitor. However, be careful, as reducing the load means non-conformity with the EMC standard on the inverter itself. Always do switching with the power off.



3) Control circuit terminal board

The control circuit terminal board is common to all equipment.



| Screw size | Recommended tightening torque |           |
|------------|-------------------------------|-----------|
| M2.5 screw | 0.5 N·m                       | 4.4 lb·in |

Wire size

Solid wire: 0.3 ~ 1.5 (mm<sup>2</sup>)

Stranded wire: 0.3 ~ 1.5 (mm<sup>2</sup>)  
(AWG 22 ~ 16)

Sheath strip length: 6 (mm)

Screwdriver: Small-sized flat-blade screwdriver

(Blade thickness: 0.5 mm, blade width: 3.5 mm)

See 2.3.2 for details on all terminal functions.

## 1.4 Notes on the application

### 1.4.1 Motors

When the VF-nC3 and the motor are used in conjunction, pay attention to the following items.



#### Caution



Mandatory

Use an inverter that conforms to the specifications of power supply and three-phase induction motor being operated. If the inverter being used does not conform to those specifications, not only will the three-phase induction motor not rotate correctly, but it may cause serious accidents through overheating and fire.

#### Comparisons with commercial power operation.

The VF-nC3 Inverter employs the sinusoidal PWM system. However, the output voltage and output current are not perfect sine waves, they have a distorted wave that is close to sinusoidal waveform. This is why compared to operation with a commercial power there will be a slight increase in motor temperature, noise and vibration.

#### Operation in the low-speed area

When running continuously at low speed in conjunction with a general purpose motor, there may be a decline in that motor's cooling effect. If this happens, operate with the output decreased from rated load. To carry out low-speed operation continuously at the rated torque, we recommend to use a inverter rated motor or a forced cooled motor designed for use with an inverter. When operating in conjunction with a inverter rated motor, you must change the inverter's motor overload protection level  $\overline{U_L}$  to VF motor use.

#### Adjusting the overload protection level

The VF-nC3 Inverter protects against overloads with its overload detection circuits (electronic thermal). The electronic thermal's reference current is set to the inverter's rated current, so it must be adjusted in line with the rated current of the motor being used in combination.

#### High speed operation at and above 60Hz

Operating at frequencies greater than 60Hz will increase noise and vibration. There is also a possibility this will exceed the motor's mechanical strength limits and the bearing limits so you should inquire to the motor's manufacturer about such operation.

#### Method of lubricating load mechanisms

Operating an oil-lubricated reduction gear and gear motor in the low-speed areas will worsen the lubricating effect. Check with the manufacturer of the reduction gear to find out about operable gearing area.



### Low loads and low inertia loads

The motor may demonstrate instability such as abnormal vibrations or overcurrent trips at light loads of 50 % or under of the load percentage, or when the load's inertia moment is extremely small. If that happens reduce the carrier frequency.

### Occurrence of instability

Unstable phenomena may occur with the load and motor combinations shown below.

- Combined with a motor that exceeds applicable motor ratings for the inverter
- Combine with a much smaller motor according to the applicable motor rating of the inverter.
- Combined with special motors

To deal with the above lower the settings of inverter carrier frequency.

- Combined with couplings between load devices and motors with high backlash

When using the inverter in the above combination, use the S-pattern acceleration/deceleration function, or when vector control is selected, adjust the speed control response or switch to V/f control mode.

- Combined with loads that have sharp fluctuations in rotation such as piston movements

In this case, adjust the response time (inertial moment setting) during vector control or switch to V/f control.

### Braking a motor when cutting off power supply

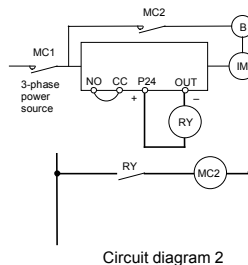
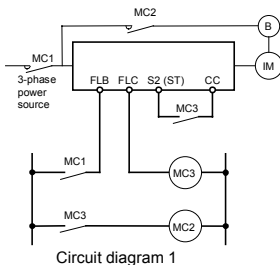
A motor with its power cut off goes into free-run, and does not stop immediately. To stop the motor quickly as soon as the power is cut off install an auxiliary brake. There are different kinds of brake devices, both electrical and mechanical. Select the brake that is best for the system.

### Load that produces regenerative torque

When combined with a load that produces regenerative torque, the overvoltage or overcurrent protection function may be activated to trip the inverter.

## Motors with a brake

When motors with a brake are directly connected to the inverter's output, the brake cannot be released at startup because of low voltage. Wire the brake circuit separately from the main circuit.



In circuit diagram 1, the brake is turned on and off through MC2 and MC3. If you do not wire it as shown in diagram 1, an over-current trip may occur because of a bound current during brake operation. (Example of running preparation ST assigned to terminal S2.)

In circuit diagram 2, the brake is turned on and off by using low-speed signal OUT.

In some situations, such as with elevators, turning the brake on and off with a low-speed signal may be appropriate. Be sure to contact us before designing your system.

## 1.4.2 Inverters

### Protecting inverters from overcurrent

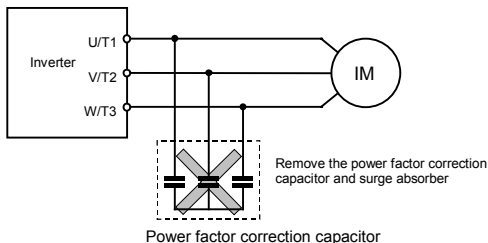
The inverter has an overcurrent protection function. The programmed current level is set to the inverter's maximum applicable motor. If the motor used has a small capacity, the overcurrent level and the electronic thermal protection must be readjusted. If adjustment is necessary, see 5.13, and make adjustments as directed.

### Inverter capacity

Do not use a small-capacity (kVA) inverter to control the operation of a large-capacity motor (two-class or more larger motor), no matter how light the load is. Current ripple will raise the output peak current making it easier to set off the overcurrent trip.

## Power factor correction capacitor

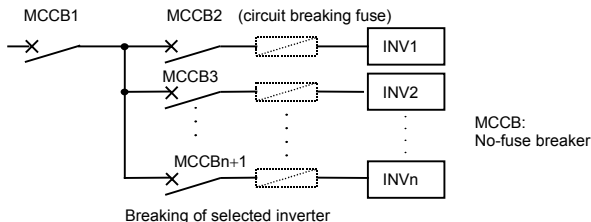
Power factor correction capacitors cannot be installed on the output side of the inverter. When a motor is run that has a power factor correction capacitor attached to it, remove the capacitors. This can cause inverter malfunction and capacitor destruction.



## Operating at other than rated voltage

Connections to voltages other than the rated voltage described in the rating label cannot be made. If a connection must be made to a power supply other than one with rated voltage, use a transformer to raise or lower the voltage to the rated voltage.

## Circuit breaking when two or more inverters are used on the same power line.



There is no fuse in the inverter's main circuit. Thus, as the diagram above shows, when more than one inverter is used on the same power line, you must select interrupting characteristics so that only MCCB2 to MCCBn+1 will trip and the MCCB1 will not trip when a short occurs in the inverter (INV1). When you cannot select the proper characteristics install a circuit interrupting fuse behind MCCB2 to MCCBn+1.

## If power supply distortion is not negligible

If the power supply distortion is not negligible because the inverter shares a power distribution line with other systems causing distorted waves, such as systems with thyristors or large-capacity inverters, install an input reactor to improve the input power factor, to reduce higher harmonics, or to suppress external surges.

## ■ Disposal

See chapter 16.

### 1.4.3 What to do about the leakage current

#### ⚠ Caution

Current may leak through the inverter's input/output wires because of insufficient electrostatic capacity on the motor with bad effects on peripheral equipment.

The leakage current's value is affected by the carrier frequency and the length of the input/output wires. Test and adopt the following remedies against leak current.

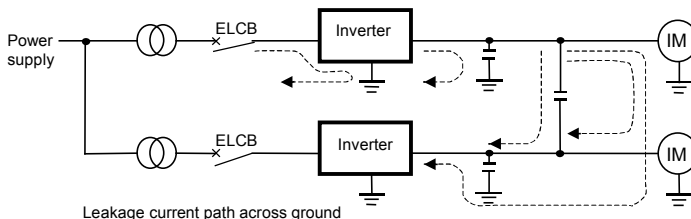
#### (1) Leakage current from the inverter main unit

Some of these inverters are equipped with a ground capacitor compliant with the EMC directive which gives them a comparatively higher value than a normal inverter. Take this into consideration when selecting a leakage breaker.

For details, see "Leakage current" (E6580977) in the separate user manual.

#### (2) Effects of leak current across ground

Leakage current may flow not just through the inverter system but also through ground wires to other systems. Leakage current will cause earth leakage breakers, leakage current relays, ground relays, fire alarms and sensors to operate improperly, and it will cause superimposed noise on the TV screen or display of incorrect current detection with the CT.



**Remedies:**

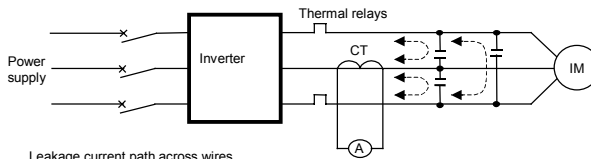
1. If there is no radio-frequency interference or similar problem, detach the built-in noise filter capacitor, using the grounding capacitor disconnecting switch. (See 1.3.3-2))

2. Reduce PWM carrier frequency.

The setting of PWM carrier frequency is done with the parameter  $F300$ .

Although the electromagnetic noise level is reduced, the motor acoustic noise is increased.

3. Use high frequency remedial products for earth leakage breakers

**(3) Affects of leakage current across lines**

Leakage current path across wires

**(1) Thermal relays**

The high frequency component of current leaking into electrostatic capacity between inverter output wires will increase the effective current values and make externally connected thermal relays operate improperly. If the wires are more than 50 meters long, it will be easy for the external thermal relay to operate improperly with models having motors of low rated current (several Ampere) or less, because the leakage current will increase in proportion to the motor rating.

**Remedies:**

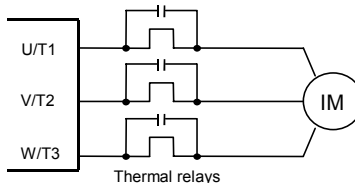
1. Use the electronic thermal built into the inverter. (See 3.5)

The setting of the electronic thermal is done using parameter  $OLN$ ,  $tHr$ .

2. Reduce the inverter's PWM carrier frequency. However, that will increase the motor's magnetic noise.

The setting of PWM carrier frequency is done with the parameter  $F300$ . (See 6.11 in E6581595)

3. This can be improved by installing 0.1 $\mu$ ~0.5 $\mu$ F - 1000V film capacitor to the input/output terminals of each phase in the thermal relay.



## (2) CT and ammeter

If a CT and ammeter are connected externally to detect inverter output current, the leak current's high frequency component may destroy the ammeter. If the wires are more than 50 meters long, it will be easy for the high frequency component to pass through the externally connected CT and be superimposed on and burn the ammeter with models having motors of low rated current (several A(ampere) or less), because the leakage current will increase in proportion to the motor's rated current.

## Remedies:

## 1. Use a meter output terminal in the inverter control circuit.

The load current can be output on the meter output terminal (FM). If the meter is connected, use an ammeter of 1mA<sub>dc</sub> full scale or a voltmeter of 10V full scale.

0-20mA<sub>dc</sub> (4-20mA<sub>dc</sub>) can be also output. (See 5.6)




## 2. Use the monitor functions built into the inverter.




Use the monitor functions on the panel built into the inverter to check current values. (See 8.2.1)

## 1.4.4 Installation

### ■ Installation environment

The VF-nC3 Inverter is an electronic control instrument. Take full consideration to installing it in the proper operating environment.

|  <b>Warning</b> |   |
|--|---|
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not place any inflammable substances near the VF-nC3 Inverter. If an accident occurs in which flame is emitted, this could lead to fire.</li> </ul>       |
| <br>Mandatory   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operate under the environmental conditions prescribed in the instruction manual. Operations under any other conditions may result in malfunction.</li> </ul> |

|  <b>Caution</b> |   |
|--|---|
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not install the VF-nC3 Inverter in any location subject to large amounts of vibration. This could cause the unit to fall, resulting in bodily injury.</li> </ul>  |
| <br>Mandatory  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check to make sure that the input power voltage is +10%, -15% of the rated power voltage written on the rating label (<math>\pm 10\%</math> when the load is 100% in continuous operation) If the input power voltage is not +10%, -15% of the rated power voltage (<math>\pm 10\%</math> when the load is 100% in continuous operation) this may result in fire.</li> </ul> |

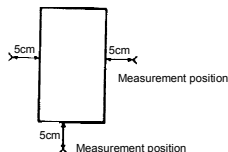


- Do not install in any location of high temperature, high humidity, moisture condensation and freezing and avoid locations where there is exposure to water and/or where there may be large amounts of dust, metallic fragments and oil mist.
- Do not install in any location where corrosive gases or grinding fluids are present.

- Operate in areas where ambient temperature ranges from -10°C to 60°C. Operation over 40°C is allowed when the top label is peeled off. When installing the inverter where the ambient temperature will rise above 50°C, remove the label (seal) from the top and operate it at a current lower than the rated one. (See 6.11 in E6581595.)



[Position for measuring ambient temperature]



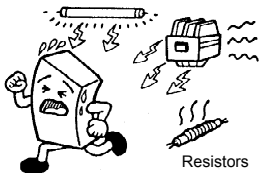
Note: The inverter is a heat-emitting body. Make sure proper space and ventilation is provided when installing in the cabinet. When installing inside a cabinet, we recommend the top seal peeled off although 40°C or less.

- Do not install in any location that is subject to large amounts of vibration.






Note: If the VF-nC3 Inverter is installed in a location that is subject to vibration, anti-vibration measures are required. Please consult with Toshiba about these measures.



- If the VF-nC3 Inverter is installed near any of the equipment listed below, provide measures to insure against errors in operation.



- Solenoids: Attach surge suppressor on coil.
- Brakes: Attach surge suppressor on coil.
- Magnetic contactors: Attach surge suppressor on coil.
- Fluorescent lights: Attach surge suppressor on coil.
- Resistors: Place far away from VF-nC3 Inverter.

## ■ How to install

|  <b>Warning</b> |  |
|--|--|
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not install or operate the inverter if it is damaged or any component is missing. This can result in electric shock or fire. Please consult your local sales agency for repairs. Call your local sales agency for repairs.</li> </ul>  |
| <br>Mandatory   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mount the inverter on a metal plate. The rear panel gets very hot. Do not install in an inflammable object, this can result in fire.</li> <li>Do not operate with the front panel cover removed. This can result in electric shock.</li> <li>An emergency stop device must be installed that fits with system specifications (e.g. shut off input power then engage mechanical brake). Operation cannot be stopped immediately by the inverter alone, thus risking an accident or injury.</li> <li>All options used must be those specified by Toshiba. The use of any other option may result in an accident.</li> </ul> |

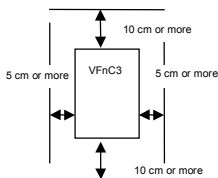
|  <b>Caution</b> |  |
|--|--|
| <br>Mandatory   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The main unit must be installed on a base that can bear the unit's weight. If the unit is installed on a base that cannot withstand that weight, the unit may fall resulting in injury.</li> <li>If braking is necessary (to hold motor shaft), install a mechanical brake. The brake on the inverter will not function as a mechanical hold, and if used for that purpose, injury may result.</li> </ul> |

### (1) Normal installation

Select an indoor location with good ventilation, and then install it upright on a flat metal plate.

When installing multiple inverters, leave at least 5 cm of space between each inverter and install them aligned horizontally.

When using the inverter in locations with temperatures above 40°C, remove the caution plate (sticker) on top of the inverter before use. Current reduction is necessary in locations that exceed 50°C.

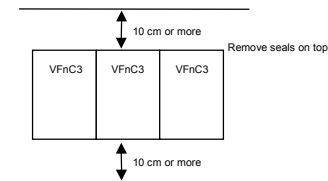


### (2) Side-by-side installation

To align the inverters side-by-side horizontally, remove the caution plate (sticker) on top of the inverter before use.

Current reduction is necessary in locations that exceed 40 °C.





The space shown in the diagram is the minimum allowable space. Because air cooled equipment has cooling fans built in on the top or bottom surfaces, make the space on top and bottom as large as possible to allow for air passage.

Note: Do not install in any location where there is high humidity or high temperatures and where there are large amounts of dust, metallic fragments and oil mist.

## ■ Calorific values of the inverter and the required ventilation

About 5% of the rated power of the inverter will be lost as a result of conversion from AC to DC or from DC to AC. In order to suppress the rise in temperature inside the cabinet when this loss becomes heat loss, the interior of the cabinet must be ventilated and cooled.

The amount of forcible air-cooling ventilation required and the necessary heat discharge surface quantity when operating in a sealed cabinet according to motor capacity are as follows.

### Notes

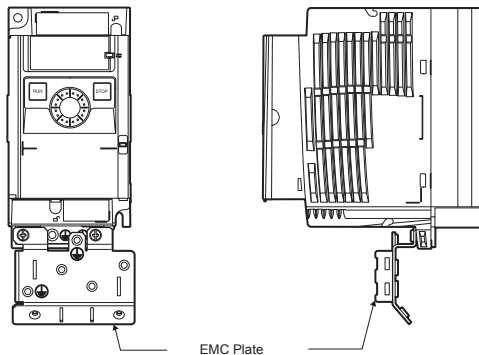
- 1) The heat loss for the optional external devices (input reactor, DC reactor, radio noise reduction filters, etc.) is not included in the calorific values in the table
- 2) Case of 100% Load Continuation operation.

| Voltage class              | Operating motor capacity (kW) | Inverter type | Calorific values |       | Amount of forcible air cooling ventilation required (m <sup>3</sup> /min) |       | Heat discharge surface area required for sealed storage cabinet (m <sup>2</sup> ) |       |      |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|------------------|-------|---|-------|---|-------|------|
|                            |                               |               | 4kHz             | 12kHz | 4kHz  | 12kHz | 4kHz  | 12kHz |      |
| Single-phase<br>100V class | 0.1                           | VFNC3S        | 1001P            | 13    | 14  | 0.07  | 0.08  | 0.26  | 0.28 |
|                            | 0.2                           |               | 1002P            | 18    | 20  | 0.10  | 0.11  | 0.36  | 0.40 |
|                            | 0.4                           |               | 1004P            | 29    | 33  | 0.16  | 0.19  | 0.58  | 0.66 |
|                            | 0.75                          |               | 1007P            | 48    | 54  | 0.27  | 0.31  | 0.96  | 1.08 |
| Single-phase<br>200V class | 0.1                           | VFNC3S        | 2001PL           | 13    | 14  | 0.07  | 0.08  | 0.26  | 0.28 |
|                            | 0.2                           |               | 2002PL           | 18    | 20  | 0.10  | 0.11  | 0.36  | 0.40 |
|                            | 0.4                           |               | 2004PL           | 27    | 31  | 0.15  | 0.18  | 0.54  | 0.62 |
|                            | 0.75                          |               | 2007PL           | 44    | 43  | 0.25  | 0.24  | 0.88  | 0.86 |
|                            | 1.5                           |               | 2015PL           | 72    | 83  | 0.41  | 0.47  | 1.44  | 1.66 |
| 2.2                        | 2022PL                        | 93            | 102              | 0.53  | 0.53  | 1.86  | 2.04  |       |      |
| Three-phase<br>300V class  | 0.1                           | VFNC3S        | 2001P            | 13    | 14  | 0.07  | 0.08  | 0.26  | 0.28 |
|                            | 0.2                           |               | 2002P            | 16    | 18  | 0.09  | 0.10  | 0.32  | 0.36 |
|                            | 0.4                           |               | 2004P            | 24    | 28  | 0.14  | 0.16  | 0.48  | 0.56 |
|                            | 0.75                          |               | 2007P            | 41    | 45  | 0.23  | 0.26  | 0.82  | 0.90 |
|                            | 1.5                           |               | 2015P            | 73    | 85  | 0.41  | 0.48  | 1.46  | 1.70 |
|                            | 2.2                           |               | 2022P            | 85    | 90  | 0.48  | 0.51  | 1.70  | 1.80 |
|                            | 4.0                           |               | 2037P            | 128   | 133   | 0.73  | 0.75  | 2.56  | 2.66 |

## ■ Panel designing taking into consideration the effects of noise

The inverter generates high frequency noise. When designing the control panel setup, consideration must be given to that noise. Examples of measures are given below.

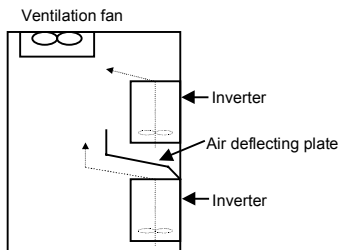
- Wire so that the main circuit wires and the control circuit wires are separated. Do not place them in the same conduit, do not run them parallel, and do not bundle them.
- Provide shielding and twisted wire for control circuit wiring.
- Separate the input (power) and output (motor) wires of the main circuit. Do not place them in the same conduit, do not run them parallel, and do not bundle them.
- Ground the inverter ground terminals (⏚).
- Install surge suppressor on any magnetic contactor and relay coils used around the inverter.
- Install noise filters if necessary.
- To comply with the EMC directives, install the optional EMC plate and fix the shield to it.
- Install EMC plate and use shielded wires.






## ■ Installing more than one unit in a cabinet



If you are installing two or more inverters in one cabinet, pay attention to the following.

- Inverters may be installed side by side with each other with no space left between them.
- When installing inverters side by side, detach the caution label on the top surface of each inverter and use them where the ambient temperature will not rise above 40°C.
- When using inverters where the ambient temperature will rise above 40°C, leave a space of 5 cm or more between them and remove the caution label from the top of each inverter, or operate each inverter at a current lower than the rated one.
- Ensure a space of at least 20 centimeters on the top and bottom of the inverters.
- Install an air deflecting plate so that the heat rising up from the inverter on the bottom does not affect the inverter on the top.








## 2. Connection



|  <b>Warning</b>            |   |
|---|---|
| <br>Disassembly prohibited | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Never disassemble, modify or repair.<br/>This can result in electric shock, fire and injury. For repairs, call your sales agency.</li> </ul>   |
| <br>Prohibited             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Don't stick your fingers into openings such as cable wiring hole and cooling fan covers.<br/>This can result in electric shock or other injury.</li> <li>Don't place or insert any kind of object into the inverter (electrical wire cuttings, rods, wires). This can result in electric shock or fire.</li> <li>Do not allow water or any other fluid to come in contact with the inverter.<br/>That may result in electric shock or fire.</li> </ul> |

|  <b>Caution</b> |   |
|--|---|
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When transporting or carrying, do not hold by the front panel covers.<br/>The covers may come off and the unit will drop out resulting in injury.</li> </ul> |

### 2.1 Cautions on wiring

|  <b>Warning</b> |   |
|--|---|
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Never remove the terminal cover when power is on or open door if enclosed in a cabinet.<br/>The unit contains many high voltage parts and contact with them will result in electric shock.</li> </ul>  |
| <br>Mandatory   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn power on only after attaching the front cover or closing door if enclosed in a cabinet.<br/>If power is turned on without the terminal cover attached or closing door if enclosed in a cabinet. This can result in electric shock or other injury.</li> <li>Electrical construction work must be done by a qualified expert.<br/>Connection of input power by someone who does not have that expert knowledge may result in fire or electric shock.</li> <li>Connect output terminals (motor side) correctly.<br/>If the phase sequence is incorrect, the motor will operate in reverse and that may result in injury.</li> <li>Wiring must be done after installation.<br/>If wiring is done prior to installation that may result in injury or electric shock.</li> <li>The following steps must be performed before wiring.             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Shut off all input power.</li> <li>(2) Wait at least 15 minutes and check to make sure that the charge lamp is no longer lit.</li> <li>(3) Use a tester that can measure DC voltage (400VDC or more), and check to make sure that the voltage to the DC main circuits (across PA-PC) is 45V or less.<br/>If these steps are not properly performed, the wiring will cause electric shock.</li> </ol> </li> <li>Tighten the screws on the terminal board to specified torque.<br/>If the screws are not tightened to the specified torque, it may lead to fire.</li> </ul> |

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  <b>Warning</b>  |  |
| <br>Be Grounded | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ground must be connected securely.<br/>If the ground is not securely connected, it could lead to electric shock or fire when a malfunction or current leak occurs.</li> </ul> |

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  <b>Caution</b> |  |
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not attach devices with built-in capacitors (such as noise filters or surge absorber) to the output (motor side) terminal.<br/>This could cause a fire.</li> </ul> |

### Preventing radio noise


To prevent electrical interference such as radio noise, separately bundle wires to the main circuit's power terminals (R/L1, S/L2, T/L3) and wires to the motor terminals (U/T1, V/T2, W/T3).

### Control and main power supply



The control power supply and the main circuit power supply for the VFnc3 are the same. (See 6.19.3)

If a malfunction or trip causes the main circuit to be shut off, control power will also be shut off. When checking the cause of the malfunction or the trip, use the trip holding retention selection parameter.

### Wiring

- Because the space between the main circuit terminals is small use sleeved pressure terminals for the connections. Connect the terminals so that adjacent terminals do not touch each other.
- For ground terminal  use wires of the size that is equivalent to or larger than those given in table 10.1 and always ground the inverter (240V voltage class: D type ground).  
Use as large and short a ground wire as possible and wire it as close as possible to the inverter.
- For the sizes of electric wires used in the main circuit, see the table in 10.1.
- The length of the main circuit wire in 10-1 should be no longer than 30 meters. If the wire is longer than 30 meters, the wire size (diameter) must be increased.

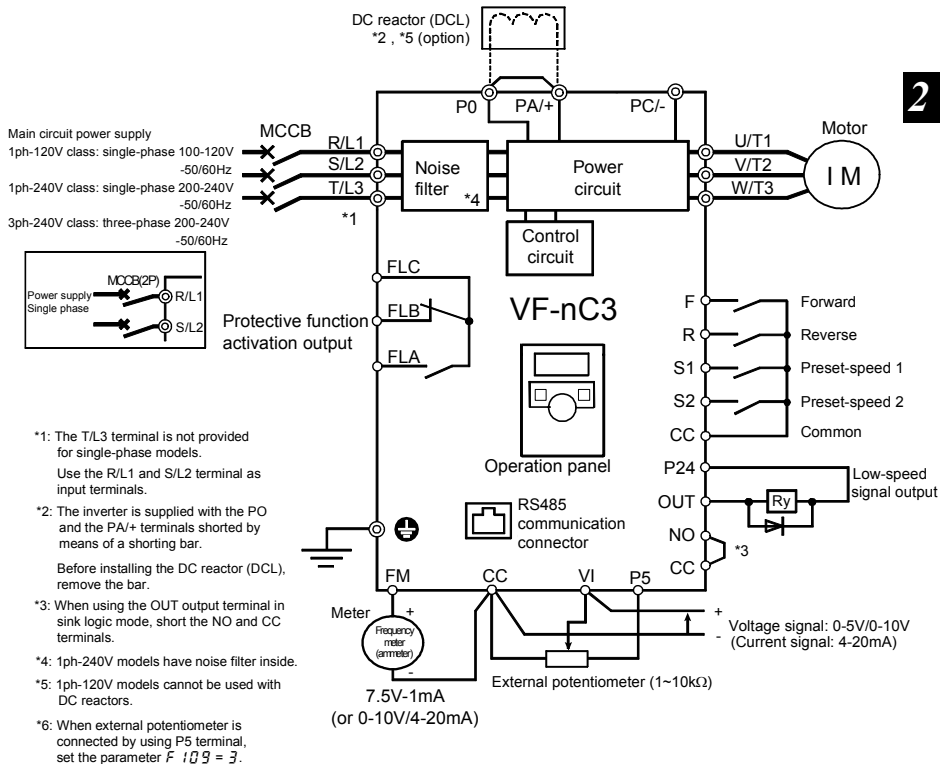
## 2.2 Standard connections

|  |   |
|--|---|
|  <b>Warning</b> |   |
| <br>Prohibited | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not connect input power to the output (motor side) terminals (U/T1, V/T2, W/T3).<br/>Connecting input power to the output could destroy the inverter or cause a fire.</li> <li>• Do not insert a resistor between DC terminals (between PA/+ and PC/-, or between PO and PC/-).<br/>It could cause a fire.<br/>See 6.13.4 for the connection of a resistor.</li> <li>• First shut off input power and wait at least 15 minutes before touching wires on equipment (MCCB) that is connected to inverter power side.<br/>Touching the wires before that time could result in electric shock.</li> </ul> |

## 2.2.1 Standard connection diagram 1

This diagram shows a standard wiring of the main circuit.

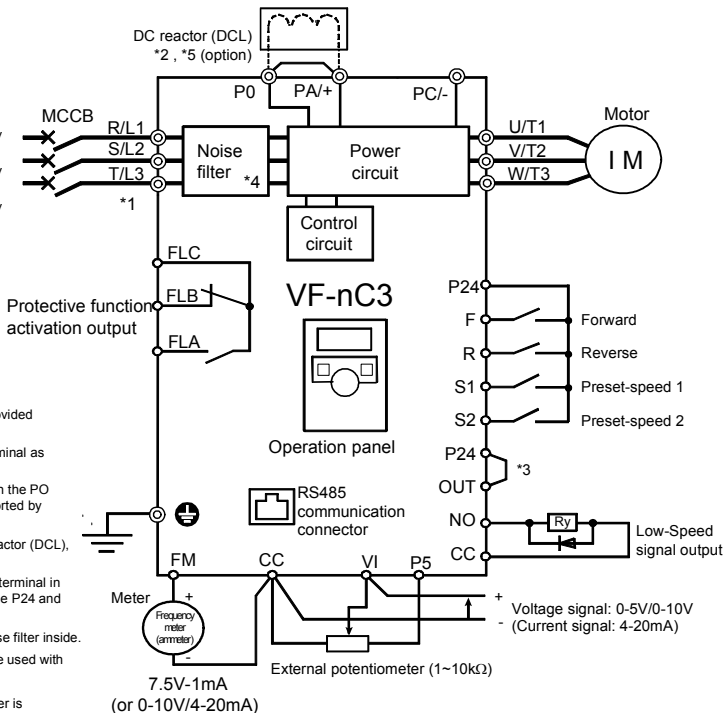
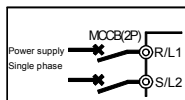
Standard connection diagram - SINK (Negative) (common:CC)



## 2.2.2 Standard connection diagram 2

Standard connection diagram - SOURCE (Positive) (common:P24)

Main circuit power supply  
 1ph-120V class: single-phase 100-120V  
 -50/60Hz  
 1ph-240V class: single-phase 200-240V  
 -50/60Hz  
 3ph-240V class: three-phase 200-240V  
 -50/60Hz



\*1: The T/L3 terminal is not provided for single-phase models.

Use the R/L1 and S/L2 terminal as input terminals.

\*2: The inverter is supplied with the PO and the PA+ terminals shorted by means of a shorting bar.  
 Before installing the DC reactor (DCL), remove the bar.

\*3: When using the NO output terminal in source logic mode, short the P24 and OUT terminals.

\*4: 1ph-240V models have noise filter inside.

\*5: 1ph-120V models cannot be used with DC reactors.

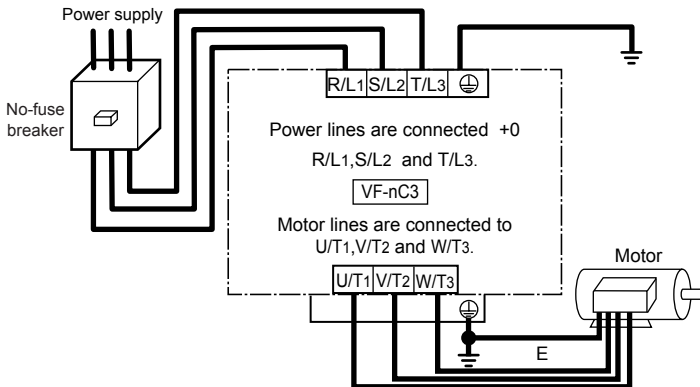
\*6: When external potentiometer is connected by using P5 terminal, set the parameter  $F103 = 3$ .

## 2.3 Description of terminals

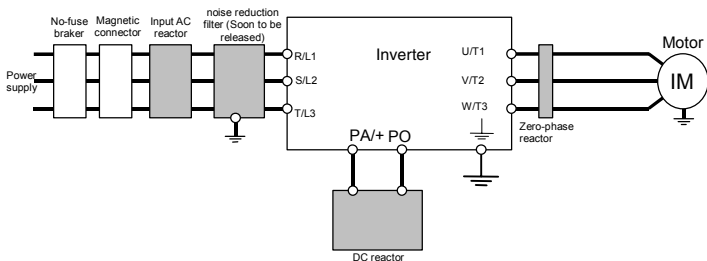
### 2.3.1 Power circuit terminals

This diagram shows an example of wiring of the main circuit. Use options if necessary.

#### Power supply and motor connections




#### Connections with peripheral equipment



Note 1: The T/L3 terminal is not provided for any single-phase models. So if you are using single-phase models, use the R/L1 and S/L2 terminals to connect power cables.



## Power circuit

| Terminal symbol   | Terminal function   |
|---|---|
|  | Grounding terminal for connecting inverter. There are 3 terminals in total.   |
| R/L1,S/L2,T/L3  | 120V class: single-phase 100 to 120V-50/60Hz<br>240V class: single-phase 200 to 240V-50/60Hz<br>three-phase 200 to 240V-50/60Hz<br>* Single-phase input: R/L1 and S/L2 terminals  |
| U/T1,V/T2,W/T3  | Connect to a (three-phase induction) motor.   |
| PC/-  | This is a negative potential terminal in the internal DC main circuit. DC common power can be input across the PA terminals (positive potential).   |
| PO, PA+   | Terminals for connecting a DC reactor (DCL: optional e11external device). Shorted by a short bar when shipped from the factory. Before installing DCL, remove the short bar. 1-phase 100V models cannot be used with DC reactors. |

The arrangement of power circuit terminals are different from each range.

Refer to 1.3.2.1).

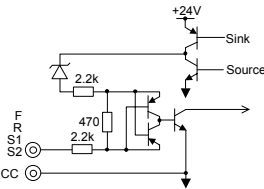
## 2.3.2 Control circuit terminals

The control circuit terminal board is common to all equipment.

Regarding to the function and specification of each terminal, please refer to the following table.

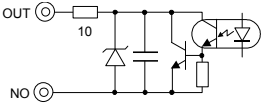
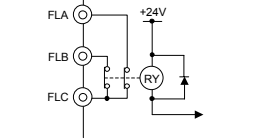
Refer to 1.3.2.3) about the arrangement of control circuit terminals.

## Control circuit terminals

| Terminal symbol | Input / output | Function   | Electrical specifications  | Inverter internal circuits  |
|-----------------|----------------|--|--|---|
| F               | Input          | Shorting across F-CC causes forward rotation; open causes slow-down and stop. (When ST is always ON)<br>3 different functions can be assigned. | No voltage contact input<br>24Vdc-5mA or less<br><br>*Sink/Source selectable using parameter $F 1 2 7$ |  |
| R               | Input          | Shorting across R-CC causes reverse rotation; open causes slow-down and stop. (When ST is always ON)<br>3 different functions can be assigned. |  |   |
| S1              | Input          | Shorting across S1-CC causes preset speed operation.<br>2 different functions can be assigned.   |  |   |
| S2              | Input          | Shorting across S2-CC causes preset speed operation.<br>2 different functions can be assigned.   |  |   |

| Terminal symbol | Input / output           | Function   | Electrical specifications  | Inverter internal circuits |
|-----------------|--------------------------|--|--|----------------------------|
| CC              | Common to Input / output | Control circuit's equipotential terminal (2 terminals)   |  |                            |
| P5              | Output                   | Analog power supply output   | 5Vdc<br>(permissible load current: 10mA)   |                            |
| VI              | Input                    | <p>Multifunction programmable analog input. Factory default setting: 0~10Vdc (1/1000 resolution) and 0~60Hz (0~50Hz) frequency input.</p> <p>The function can be changed to 4~20mA (0~20mA) current input by parameter <math>F\ 1\ 0\ 9 = 1</math> setting and 0~5Vdc (1/1000 resolution) voltage input by parameter <math>F\ 1\ 0\ 9 = 3</math> setting.</p> <p>By changing parameter <math>F\ 1\ 0\ 9 = 2</math> setting, this terminal can also be used as a multifunction programmable contact input terminal. When using the sink logic, be sure to insert a resistor between P24-VIA (4.7 k<math>\Omega</math>—1/2 W).</p> | 5V/10Vdc<br>(internal impedance: 30k $\Omega$ )<br><br>4-20mA<br>(internal impedance: 250 $\Omega$ )<br>Note 1)  |                            |
| FM              | Output                   | <p>Multifunction programmable analog output. Standard default setting: output frequency.</p> <p>The function can be changed to 0~10Vdc voltage or 0~20mA (4~20mA) current output by parameter <math>F\ 5\ 8\ 1</math> setting.</p>   | 1mA dc full-scale ammeter<br><br>0~10V DC volt meter<br><br>0~20mA (4~20mA) DC ammeter<br>Permissible load resistance: 750 $\Omega$ or less<br><br>0~10V DC volt meter |                            |
| P24             | Output                   | 24Vdc power output   | 24Vdc-100mA  |                            |

Note 1) Be careful, if 4-20 mA is selected, when the inverter's power is ON, the internal impedance is 250  $\Omega$ , but when the power is OFF, the internal impedance increases very much to approximately 40 k $\Omega$ .

| Terminal symbol   | Input / output | Function   | Electrical specifications   | Inverter internal circuits  |
|-------------------|----------------|--|---|---|
| OUT<br>NO         | Output         | <p>Multifunction programmable open collector output. Standard default settings detect and output low speed signal. Multifunction output terminals to which two different functions can be assigned. The NO terminal is an isoelectric output terminal. It is insulated from the CC terminal.</p> <p>By changing parameter settings, these terminals can also be used as multifunction programmable pulse train output terminals.</p> | <p>Open collector output<br/>24Vdc-100mA</p> <p>To output pulse trains, a current of 10mA or more needs to be passed.</p> <p>Pulse frequency range:<br/>38~1600Hz</p> |  |
| FLA<br>FLB<br>FLC | Output         | <p>Multifunction programmable relay contact output.</p> <p>Detects the operation of the inverter's protection function.</p> <p>Contact across FLA-FLC is closed and FLB-FLC is opened during protection function operation.</p>  | <p>250Vac-2A<br/>(<math>\cos\phi=1</math>)<br/>: at resistance load<br/>30Vdc-1A<br/>250Vac-1A<br/>(<math>\cos\phi=0.4</math>)</p>                                    |  |

2

## SINK (Negative) logic/SOURCE (Positive) logic (When the inverter's internal power supply is used)

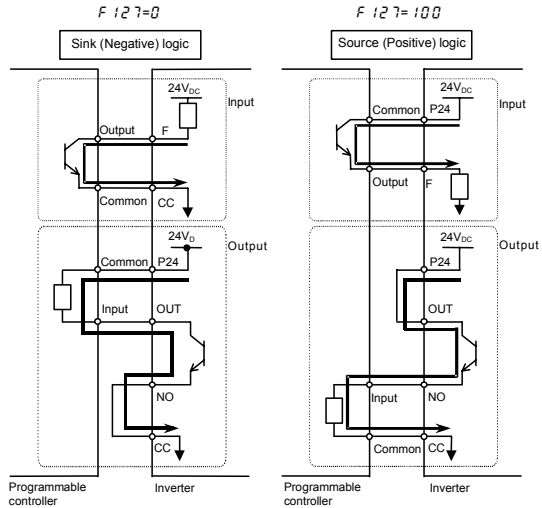
Current flowing out turns control input terminals on. These are called sink logic terminals.

The general used method in Europe is source logic in which current flowing into the input terminal turns it on .

Sink logic is sometimes referred to as negative logic, and source logic is referred to as positive logic.

Each logic is supplied with electricity from either the inverter's internal power supply or an external power supply, and its connections vary depending on the power supply used.

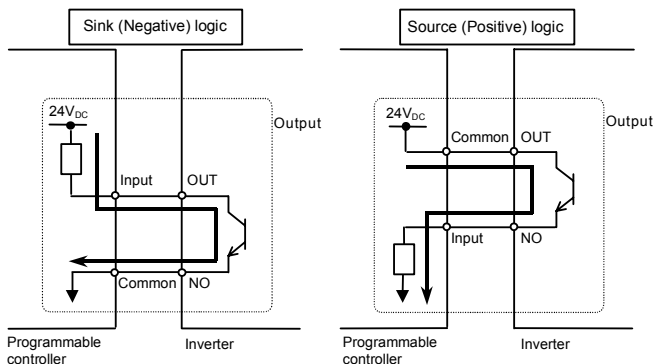
<Examples of connections when the inverter's internal power supply is used>



## SINK (Negative) logic/SOURCE (Positive) logic (When an external power supply is used)

The output logic terminal (OUT-NO) can be used by external power supply.

<Examples of connections when an external power supply is used>



## Selecting the functions of the VI terminal between analog input and logic contact input

The functions of the VI terminal can be selected between analog input and logic contact input by changing parameter settings ( $F 109$ ). (Factory default setting: Analog input 0-10V)

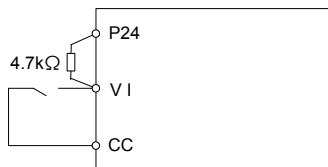
When using this terminal as logic contact input terminal in a sink logic circuit, be sure to insert a resistor between the P24 and VI terminals. (Recommended resistance:  $4.7k\Omega-1/2W$ )

If no resistor is inserted, logic contact input will be left always ON, which is very dangerous.




Switch between analog input and logic contact input before connecting the terminals to the control circuit terminals. Otherwise the inverter or devices connected to it may be damaged.




☆ The figure on the right shows an example of the connection of input terminals VI when they are used as contact input terminals. This example illustrates the connection when the inverter is used in sink (Negative) logic mode.

$F 109=2$



### 3. Operations

|  <b>Caution</b> |  |
|--|--|
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not touch inverter terminals when electrical power is going to the inverter even if the motor is stopped.<br/>Touching the inverter terminals while power is connected to it may result in electric shock.</li> <li>Do not touch switches when the hands are wet and do not try to clean the inverter with a damp cloth. Such practices may result in electric shock.</li> <li>Do not go near the motor in alarm-stop status when the retry function is selected.<br/>The motor may suddenly restart and that could result in injury.<br/>Take measures for safety, e.g. attaching a cover to the motor, against accidents when the motor unexpectedly restarts.</li> </ul>  |
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the input power on only after attaching the terminal block cover (i.e., after closing the cabinet doors).<br/>If the input power is turned on without the terminal block cover attached (i.e., without closing the cabinet doors), this may result in electric shock.</li> <li>If the inverter begins to emit smoke or an unusual odor, or unusual sounds, immediately turn power off. If the equipment is continued in operation in such a state, the result may be fire. Call your local sales agency for repairs.</li> <li>Always turn power off if the inverter is not used for long periods of time.</li> <li>Turn the input power on only after attaching the terminal block cover.<br/>When enclosed inside a cabinet and used with the terminal block cover removed, always close the cabinet doors first and then turn the power on. If the power is turned on with the terminal block cover or the cabinet doors open, this may result in electric shock.</li> <li>Make sure that operation signals are off before resetting the inverter after malfunction.<br/>If the inverter is reset before turning off the operating signal, the motor may restart suddenly causing injury.</li> </ul> |

|  <b>Caution</b>        |  |
|---|--|
| <br>Contact prohibited | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not touch heat radiating fins or discharge resistors.<br/>These device are hot, and you'll get burned if you touch them.</li> </ul>  |
| <br>Prohibited         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Observe all permissible operating ranges of motors and mechanical equipment. (Refer to the motor's instruction manual.)<br/>Not observing these ranges may result in injury.</li> </ul> |

### 3.1 How to Set the Setup Menu

#### Warning




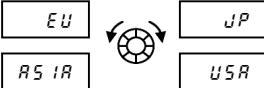

Instruction

- If incorrect setting, the drive may have some damage or unexpected movement. Be sure to set the setup parameter correctly.

Set the setup menu according to the logic for control input signals used and the base frequency of the motor connected. (If you are not sure which setup menu should be selected region codes and what values should be specified, consult your distributor.)

Each setup menu automatically sets all parameters relating to the logic for control input signals used and the base frequency of the motor connected. (See the table on the following page.)

Follow these steps to change the setup menu [Example: Selecting a region code to *EU*]

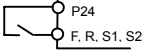
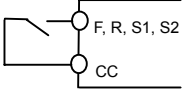
| Panel operated  | LED display   | Operation   |
|---|---|---|
|   | <i>SEt</i>  | Power on. ( <i>SEt</i> is blinking)                                   |
|  |  | Turn the setting dial, and select region code " <i>EU</i> " (Europe). |
|  | <i>EU ⇄ in it</i>   | Press the center of the setting dial to determine the region.         |
|   | <i>0.0</i>  | The operation frequency is displayed (Standby).                       |

☆ When changing the region selected in the setup menu, the setup menu can be called again by the following method. Note, however, that all parameter settings return to standard defaults.

- Set parameter *tYP* to "*13*".
- Set parameter *SEt* to "*0*".

☆ The parameter settings in the table on the following page can be changed individually even after they are selected in the setup menu.

## ■ Values set by each setup parameter

| Title                         | Function  | <i>EU</i><br>(Mainly in Europe)  | <i>USA</i><br>(Mainly in North America)   | <i>RSIA</i><br>(Mainly in Asia, Oceania) | <i>JP</i><br>(Mainly in Japan) |
|-------------------------------|---|--|---|--|--------------------------------|
| <i>FH</i>                     | Max. frequency                                    | 50.0(Hz)   | 60.0(Hz)  | 50.0(Hz)                                 | 80.0(Hz)                       |
| <i>UL /<br/>UL /<br/>F170</i> | Frequency settings                                | 50.0(Hz)   | 60.0(Hz)  | 50.0(Hz)                                 | 60.0(Hz)                       |
| <i>F204</i>                   | Frequency of V1 input point 2                     | 50.0(Hz)   | 60.0(Hz)  | 50.0(Hz)                                 | 60.0(Hz)                       |
| <i>ULU /<br/>F171</i>         | Base frequency voltage 1/2                        | 230(V)   | 230(V)  | 230(V)                                   | 200(V)                         |
| <i>F127</i>                   | Sink/source switching                             | 100 [ Source logic ]<br>(Positive common)<br>(Common : P24)<br> | 0 [ Sink logic ]<br>(Negative common)<br>(Common : CC)<br> |  |                                |
| <i>F307</i>                   | Power voltage compensation (output voltage limit) | 2  | 2   | 2  | 3                              |
| <i>F417</i>                   | Rated motor speed                                 | 1410(min <sup>-1</sup> )   | 1710(min <sup>-1</sup> )  | 1410(min <sup>-1</sup> )                 | 1710(min <sup>-1</sup> )       |



## 3.2 Simplified Operation of the VF-nC3

The procedures for setting operation frequency and the methods of operation can be selected from the following.

Run / Stop

- : (1) Run and stop using the panel keypad  
(2) Run and stop using external signals to terminal board

Setting the frequency

- : (1) Setting using setting dial  
(2) Setting using external signals to terminal board (0-5V/0-10Vdc, 4-20mAdc)

Use the basic parameters  $\text{CnQd}$  (command mode selection)  $\text{FnQd}$  and (frequency setting mode selection) for selection.






| Title         | Function                         | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|---------------|----------------------------------|--|-----------------|
| $\text{CnQd}$ | Command mode selection           | 0: Terminal board<br>1: Panel keypad (including remote keypad)<br>2: RS485 communication   | 1               |
| $\text{FnQd}$ | Frequency setting mode selection | 0: Terminal board VI<br>1: Setting dial 1 (press in center to save)<br>2: Setting dial 2 (save even if power is off)<br>3: RS485 communication<br>4: -<br>5: UP/DOWN form external logic input | 2               |

☆  $\text{FnQd}=2$  (setting dial 2) is the mode where after the frequency is set by the setting dial, the frequency is saved even if the power is turned off.



☆ See E6581595, 5.5 for details of  $\text{FnQd}=3$  and 5.

### 3.2.1 How to run and stop

[Example of a  $\text{C} \text{R} \text{O} \text{d}$  setting procedure]

| Panel operation   | LED display   | Operation   |
|---|---|---|
|   | 0.0   | Displays the operation frequency (operation stopped).<br>(When standard monitor display selection $F \ 7 \ 1 \ 0 = 0$ [Operation frequency])                              |
|  | R U H   | Displays the first basic parameter [History (R U H)].   |
|  | $\text{C} \ \text{R} \ \text{O} \ \text{d}$                   | Turn the setting dial, and select " $\text{C} \ \text{R} \ \text{O} \ \text{d}$ ".  |
|  | !   | Press the center of the setting dial to read the parameter value.<br>(Standard default: !).   |
|  | 0   | Turn the setting dial to change the parameter value to 0 (terminal block).  |
|  | $0 \leftrightarrow \text{C} \ \text{R} \ \text{O} \ \text{d}$ | Press the center of the setting dial to save the changed parameter.<br>$\text{C} \ \text{R} \ \text{O} \ \text{d}$ and the parameter set value are displayed alternately. |

#### (1) Run and stop using the panel keypad ( $\text{C} \ \text{R} \ \text{O} \ \text{d} = !$ )



Use the  and  keys on the panel keypad to start and stop the motor.



 : Motor runs.       : Motor stops.

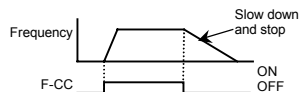
- ★ The direction of rotation is determined by the setting of parameter  $F \ r$  (forward run, reverse run selection). (0: forward run, 1: reverse run)
- ★ To switch between forward run and reverse run from the remote keypad (option), the parameter  $F \ r$  (forward run, reverse run selection) needs to be set to 2 or 3. (See 5.7 in E6581595.)

#### (2) RUN/STOP by means of an external signal to the terminal board ( $\text{C} \ \text{R} \ \text{O} \ \text{d} = 0$ ): Sink (Negative) logic

Use external signals to the inverter terminal board to start and stop the motor.

Short  and  terminals: run forward

Open  and  terminals: slow down and stop



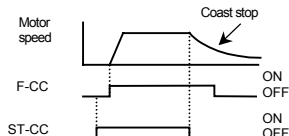
(3) Coast stop

The standard default is slowdown stop. To make a coast stop, assign "6 (ST)" to an idle terminal. Change to  $F 7 1 Q = 6$ .

For coast stop, open the ST-CC when stopping the motor in the state described at left. The monitor on the inverter at this time will display  $FFF$ .

A coast stop can also be made by assigning "95 (FRR)" to an idle terminal.

When doing this, a coast stop is done by FRR and CC both turning on.



3.2.2 How to set the frequency

[Example of  $F 7 1 Q$  setting procedure]: Setting the frequency setting destination to the terminal block

| Panel operation | LED display             | Operation  |
|-----------------|-------------------------|--|
|                 | $0.0$                   | Displays the operation frequency (operation stopped).<br>(When standard monitor display selection $F 7 1 Q = 0$ [Operation frequency]) |
|                 | $RUH$                   | Displays the first basic parameter [History ( $RUH$ )].  |
|                 | $F 7 1 Q$               | Turn the setting dial, and select " $F 7 1 Q$ ".   |
|                 | $2$                     | Press the center of the setting dial to read the parameter value.<br>(Standard default: $2$ ).   |
|                 | $0$                     | Turn the setting dial to change the parameter value to $0$ (terminal block VI).  |
|                 | $0 \Rightarrow F 7 1 Q$ | The parameter value is written. $F 7 1 Q$ and the parameter value are displayed alternately several times.                             |

\* Pressing the MODE key twice returns the display to standard monitor mode (displaying operation frequency).

(1) Setting using the keypad ( $F 7 1 Q = 1$  or  $2$ )



: Moves the frequency up




: Moves the frequency down

■ Example of operating from the panel ( $F 7 1 Q = 1$ : press in center to save)

| Panel operation | LED display                  | Operation  |
|-----------------|------------------------------|--|
|                 | $0.0$                        | Displays the operation frequency.<br>(When standard monitor display selection $F 7 1 Q = 0$ [Operation frequency]) |
|                 | $50.0$                       | Set the operation frequency. (The frequency will not be saved if the power is turned off in this state.)           |
|                 | $50.0 \Rightarrow F \square$ | Save the operation frequency. $F \square$ and the frequency are displayed alternately.                             |

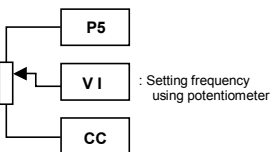
## ■ Example of operating from the panel (Fn F2: save even if power is off)

| Panel operation   | LED display | Operation  |
|---|-------------|--|
|   | 0.0         | Display the operation frequency.<br>(When standard monitor display selection is set as F7 10=0<br>(operation frequency)) |
|  | 60.0        | Set the operation frequency.   |
| -   | 60.0        | The frequency will be saved even if the power is turned off in this state.   |

(2) Setting of frequency using external signals to terminal block ( $F_{\text{pot}} = 0$ )

## ■ Frequency setting

- 1) Setting the frequency using external potentiometer

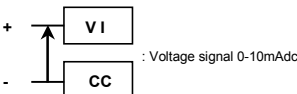


★Potentiometer  
Setting frequency using the potentiometer (1-10k $\Omega$ , 1/4W)

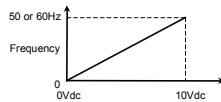


Note) Set parameter  $F_{109} = 3$ .

- 2) Setting the frequency using input voltage (0~10V)

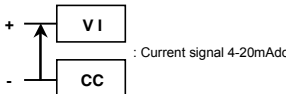


★Voltage signal  
Setting frequency using voltage signals (0~10V).

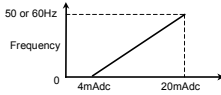


Note) Set parameter  $F_{109} = 0$ .

- 3) Setting the frequency using current input (4~20mA)

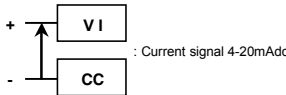


★Current Signal  
Current signal Setting frequency using current signals (4~20mA).

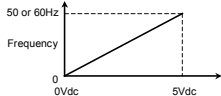


\* Setting of parameters also allow 0-20mAdc.  
Note) Set parameter  $F_{109} = 1$  and  $F_{20} = 20$ .

- 4) Setting the frequency using input voltage (0 to 5V)



★Voltage signal  
Set the frequency using voltage signals (0 to 5V).



Note) Set parameter  $F_{109} = 3$ .

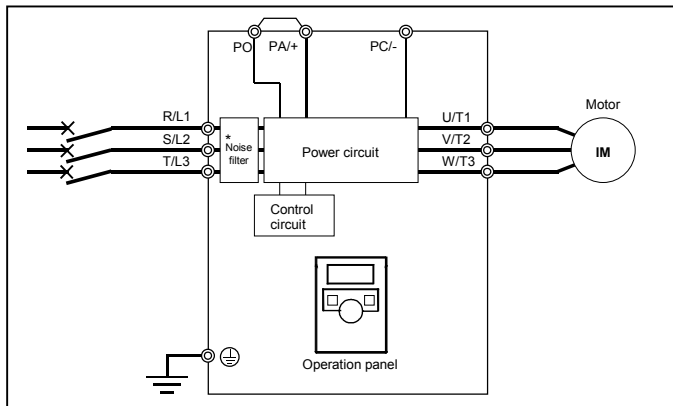
### 3.3 How to operate the VF-nC3

Overview of how to operate the inverter with simple examples.

#### Ex.1

Setting the frequency using the setting dial, and run/stop using the panel keypad (1)

#### (1) Wiring



#### Parameter setting (default setting)

| Title        | Function                         | Programmed value |
|--------------|----------------------------------|------------------|
| <i>f P d</i> | Command mode selection           | 1                |
| <i>F P d</i> | Frequency setting mode selection | 2                |

#### (3) Operation

Run/stop: Press the  and  keys on the panel.

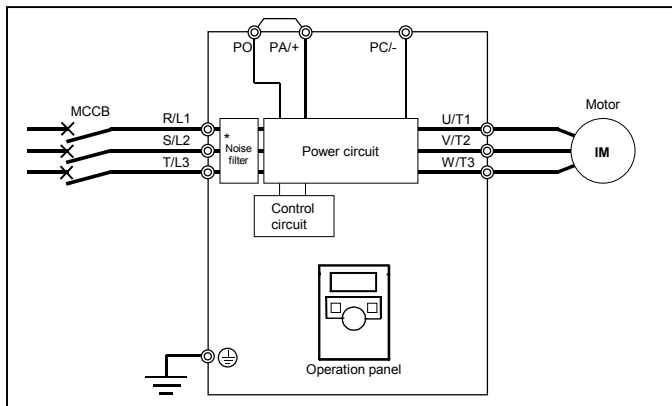
Frequency setting: Turn the setting dial to set the frequency. The frequency setting is saved just by turning the setting dial.

\* Single-phase, 200V models only

## Ex.2

Setting the frequency using the setting dial, and run/stop using the panel keypad (2)

## (1) Wiring



## (2) Parameter setting

| Title      | Function                         | Programmed value |
|------------|----------------------------------|------------------|
| <i>Cmd</i> | Command mode selection           | 1                |
| <i>Frd</i> | Frequency setting mode selection | 1                |

## (3) Operation

Run/stop: Press the  and  keys on the panel.

Frequency setting: Turn the setting dial to set the frequency.

To save the frequency setting, press the center of the setting dial.

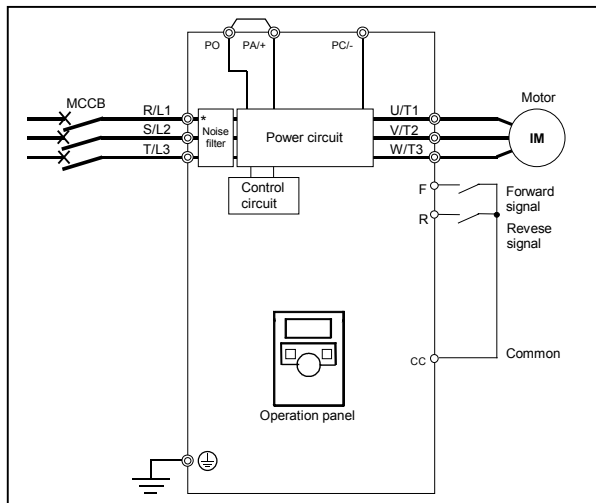
*F<sub>0</sub>* and the set frequency will flash on and off alternately.

\* Single-phase, 200V models only

**Ex.3**

Setting the frequency using the setting dial, and run/stop using external signals

(1) Wiring



(2) Parameter setting

| Title        | Function                         | Programmed value |
|--------------|----------------------------------|------------------|
| <i>C M d</i> | Command mode selection           | 0                |
| <i>F M d</i> | Frequency setting mode selection | 1 or 2           |

(3) Operation

Run/stop: ON/OFF input to F-CC, R-CC. (with sink logic)  
 Frequency setting: Turn the setting dial to set the frequency.

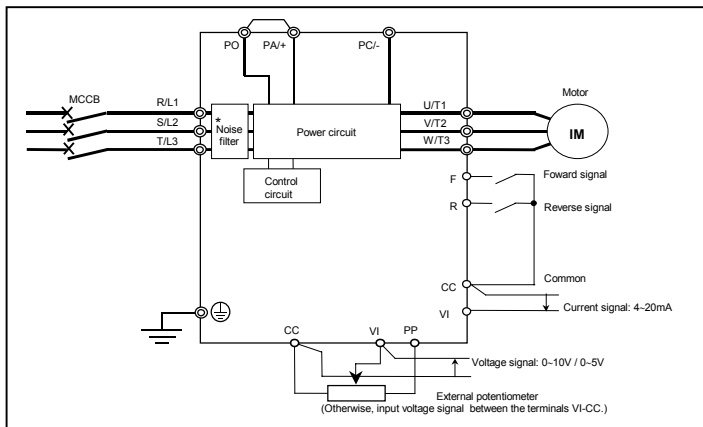
\* Single-phase, 200V models only



## Ex.4

Setting the frequency using external signals, run/stop using external signals.

## (1) Wiring



## (2) Parameter setting

| Title       | Function                         | Programmed value |
|-------------|----------------------------------|------------------|
| <i>FNOd</i> | Command mode selection           | 0                |
| <i>FNOd</i> | Frequency setting mode selection | 0                |

## (3) Operation

Run/stop: ON/OFF input to F-CC, R-CC. (with sink logic)

Frequency setting: VI: Input 0-10Vdc (external potentiometer) or 4-20mAdc to set the frequency.

\* Set the voltage/current input of VI in parameter *F 109*.

0: Voltage signal input (0-10V)

1: Current signal input (4-20mA)

3: Voltage signal input (0-5V), when the P5 terminal is connected and the external potentiometer is used

\* Single-phase, 200V models only

## 3.4 Meter setting and adjustment

**F75L**: Meter selection

**F7**: Meter adjustment gain

- Function  
Output of 0 - 1 mAdc, 0 (4) - 20 mAdc, 0 - 10 vdc can be selected for the output signal from the FM terminal, depending on the **F5B** setting. Adjust the scale at **F7**.  
Use an ammeter with a full-scale 0 - 1 mAdc meter.  
The **F5Q** (analog output bias) needs to be adjusted if output is 4 - 20 mAdc.

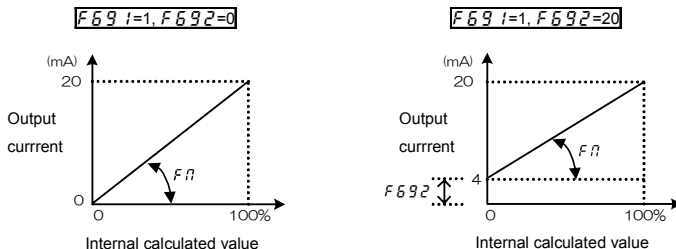
[Connected meter selection parameters]

| Title       | Function              | Adjustment range  | Supposition output at<br><b>F75L = 17</b>  | Default setting |
|-------------|-----------------------|---|--|-----------------|
| <b>F75L</b> | Meter selection       | 0: Output frequency<br>1: Output current<br>2: Frequency reference<br>3: Input voltage (DC detection)<br>4: Output voltage (command value)<br>5 - 11: -<br>12: Frequency setting value (after compensation)<br>13: VI input value<br>14: -<br>15: Fixed output 1 (output current 100% equivalent)<br>16: Fixed output 2 (output current 50% equivalent)<br>17: Fixed output 3 (other than the output current)<br>18: RS485 communication data<br>19: For adjustments ( <b>F7</b> set value is displayed.)<br>20 - 22: - | Maximum frequency ( <b>FH</b> )<br>-<br>Maximum frequency ( <b>FH</b> )<br>1.5x rated voltage<br>1.5x rated voltage<br>-<br>Maximum frequency ( <b>FH</b> )<br>-<br>Maximum input value<br>-<br>-<br>-<br>Maximum value (100.0%)<br>-<br>- | 0               |
| <b>F7</b>   | Meter adjustment gain | -   | -  | -               |

■ Resolution

All FM terminals have a maximum of 1/255.

■ Example of 4-20mA output adjustment (for details, see 6.20.2)



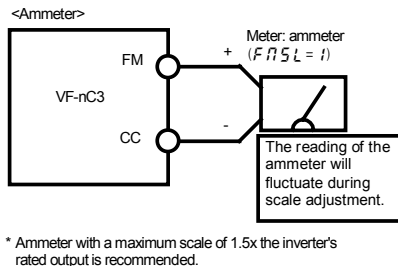
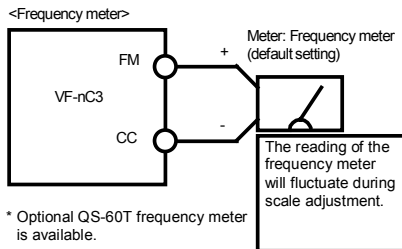
Note 1) When using the FM terminal for current output, be sure that the external load resistance is less than 750Ω.

Use at over 1 kΩ external load resistance, if used for voltage output.

Note 2)  $FnsL = f$  is the motor drive frequency.






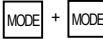
■ Adjustment scale with parameter  $Fns$  (Meter adjustment)

Connect meters as shown below.



[Example of how to adjustment the FM terminal frequency meter]

\* Use the meter's adjustment screw to pre-adjust zero-point.

| Operation panel action  | LED display | Operation   |
|---|-------------|---|
| -   | 50.0        | Displays the output frequency.<br>(When standard monitor display selection $F71Q$ is set to $Q$ )   |
|  | RUH         | The first basic parameter "RUH" (history function) is displayed.  |
|  | FN          | Turn the setting dial to select FN.   |
|  | 50.0        | Operation frequency can be read by pressing the center of the setting dial.   |
|  | 50.0        | Turn the setting dial to adjust the meter.<br>Note that the meter's indicator changes at this time, but the inverter's display (monitor) does not change. |
|  | 50.0 ⇄ FN   | Press the center of the setting dial to save the meter's calibrations.<br>FN and the frequency are displayed alternately.                                 |
|  | 50.0        | The display returns to its original indications.<br>(When standard monitor display selection $F71Q$ is set to $Q$<br>[Operation frequency])               |

## ■ Adjusting the meter in inverter stop state

- Adjustment of output current ( $FN5L = 1$ )

If, when adjusting the meter for output current, there are large fluctuations in data during adjustment, making adjustment difficult, the meter can be adjusted in inverter stop state.

When setting  $FN5L$  to  $15$  for fixed output 1 (output current 100% equivalent), a signal of absolute values will be output (inverter's rated current = 100%). In this state, adjust the meter with the FN (Meter adjustment) parameter.

Similarly, if you set  $FN5L$  to  $16$  for fixed output 2 (output current 50% equivalent), a signal that is sent out when half the inverter's rated current is flowing will be output through the FM terminal.

After meter adjustment is ended, set  $FN5L$  to  $1$  (output current).

- Other adjustments ( $FN5L = 0, 2 - 4, 12, 13, 18$ )

$FN5L = 17$ : When fixed output 3 (other than the output current) is set, a signal of the value for other monitors is fixed at the following values and output through the FM terminal.

100% standard value for each item is the following:

$FN5L = 0, 2, 12$  : Maximum frequency (FH)

$FN5L = 3, 4$  : 1.5 times of rated voltage

$FN5L = 13$  : Maximum input value (5 V, 10 V, or 20 mA)

$FN5L = 18$  : Maximum value (1000)

### 3.5 Setting the electronic thermal

**EHr** : Motor electronic-thermal protection level 1

**OLn** : Electronic thermal protection characteristic selection

**F173** : Motor electronic-thermal protection level 2

**F607** : Motor 150% overload detection time

**F632** : Electronic thermal memory

- Function

This parameter allows selection of the appropriate electronic thermal protection characteristics according to the particular rating and characteristics of the motor.

#### Parameter setting

| Title       | Function   | Adjustment range           |                          |                     |                | Default setting |
|-------------|--|----------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>EHr</b>  | Motor electronic thermal protection level 1            | 10 – 100 (%) / (A) *1      |                          |                     |                | 100             |
| <b>OLn</b>  | Electronic-thermal protection characteristic selection | Setting value              | Standard motor           | Overload protection | Overload stall | 0               |
|             |  | 0                          |                          | valid               | invalid        |                 |
|             |  | 1                          |                          | valid               | valid          |                 |
|             |  | 2                          |                          | invalid             | invalid        |                 |
|             |  | 3                          | VF motor (special motor) | invalid             | valid          |                 |
|             |  | 4                          |                          | valid               | invalid        |                 |
|             |  | 5                          |                          | valid               | valid          |                 |
|             |  | 6                          |                          | invalid             | invalid        |                 |
| 7           | invalid  | valid                      |                          |                     |                |                 |
| <b>F173</b> | Motor electronic-thermal protection level 2            | 10 – 100 (%) / (A) *1      |                          |                     |                | 100             |
| <b>F607</b> | Motor 150%-overload time limit                         | 10 – 2400 (s)              |                          |                     |                | 300             |
| <b>F632</b> | Electronic thermal memory                              | 0: None<br>1: Available *2 |                          |                     |                | 0               |

\*1: The inverter's rated current is 100%. When **F707** (current and voltage unit selection) = 1 (A (amps)/V (volts)) is selected, it can be set at A (amps).

\*2: The thermal status (overload totaling level) of the inverter or motor is saved when the power is turned off, and is calculated when the power is turned on from the off status.

Note: **F637** is a parameter for manufacturer settings. Do not change this parameter.

1) Setting the electronic thermal protection characteristics selection  $\overline{OLN}$  and motor electronic thermal protection level 1  $\overline{tHr}$ , 2  $\overline{F173}$

The electronic thermal protection characteristics selection  $\overline{OLN}$  is used to enable or disable the motor overload trip function ( $\overline{OL2}$ ) and the overload stall function.

While the inverter overload trip ( $\overline{OL1}$ ) will be in constant detect operation, the motor overload trip ( $\overline{OL2}$ ) can be selected using the parameter  $\overline{OLN}$ .

Explanation of terms

**Overload stall:** This is an optimum function for equipment such as fans, pumps and blowers with variable torque characteristics that the load current decreases as the operating speed decreases.

When the inverter detects an overload, this function automatically lowers the output frequency before the motor overload trip  $\overline{OL2}$  is activated. With this function, operation can be continued, without tripping, by operating using a frequency balanced by load current.

**Note:** Do not use the overload stall function with loads having constant torque characteristics (such as conveyor belts in which load current is fixed with no relation to speed).

[Using standard motors (other than motors intended for use with inverters)]

When a motor is used in the lower frequency range than the rated frequency, that will decrease the cooling effects for the motor. This speeds up the start of overload detection operations when a standard motor is used in order to prevent overheating.

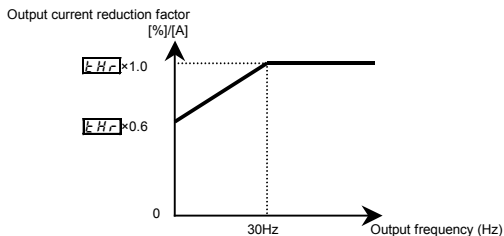
■ Setting of electronic thermal protection characteristics selection  $\overline{OLN}$

| Setting value  | Overload protection | Overload stall |
|----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| $\overline{0}$ | valid               | invalid        |
| $\overline{1}$ | valid               | valid          |
| $\overline{2}$ | invalid             | invalid        |
| $\overline{3}$ | invalid             | valid          |

■ Setting of motor electronic thermal protection level 1  $\overline{tHr}$  (Same as  $\overline{F173}$ )

When the capacity of the motor in use is smaller than the capacity of the inverter, or the rated current of the motor is smaller than the rated current of the inverter, adjust thermal protection level 1  $\overline{tHr}$  for the motor in accordance with the motor's rated current.

\* When displaying as a percentage, 100% = rated output current (A) of the inverter is displayed.



Note: The motor overload protection start level is fixed at 30Hz.

[Example of setting: When the VFNC3-2007P is running with a 0.4kW motor having 2A rated current]

| Operation panel action | LED display | Operation   |
|------------------------|-------------|---|
|                        | 0.0         | Displays the operation frequency. (Perform during operation stopped.)<br>(When standard monitor display selection $F 7 10$ is set to 0 [Operation frequency]) |
|                        | RUH         | The first basic parameter "RUH" (history function) is displayed.  |
|                        | εHr         | Turn the setting dial to change the parameter to εHr.   |
|                        | 100         | Parameter values can be read by pressing the center of the setting dial (default setting is 100%).  |
|                        | 48          | Turn the setting dial to change the parameter to 48% (= motor rated current/inverter output rated current $\times 100 = 2.0/4.2 \times 100$ )                 |
|                        | 48 ↔ εHr    | Press the center of the setting dial to save the changed parameter. εHr and the parameter are displayed alternately.  |

Note: The rated output current of the inverter should be calculated from the rated current for frequencies below 4kHz, regardless of the setting of the PWM carrier frequency parameter ( $F 300$ ).

[Using a VF motor (motor for use with inverter)]

### ■ Setting of electronic thermal protection characteristics selection 0L7

| Setting value | Overload protection | Overload stall |
|---------------|---------------------|----------------|
| 4             | valid               | invalid        |
| 5             | valid               | valid          |
| 6             | invalid             | invalid        |
| 7             | invalid             | valid          |

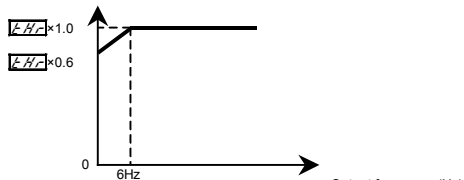
VF motors (motors designed for use with inverters) can be used in frequency ranges lower than those for standard motors, but their cooling efficiency decreases at frequencies below 6Hz.

### ■ Setting of motor electronic thermal protection level 1[εHr] (Same as $F 173$ )

If the capacity of the motor is smaller than the capacity of the inverter, or the rated current of the motor is smaller than the rated current of the inverter, adjust the electronic thermal protection level 1  $\xi H r$  so that it fits the motor's rated current.

\* If the indications are in percentages (%), then 100% equals the inverter's rated output current (A).

Output current reduction factor [%][A]



Note) The start level for motor overload reduction is fixed at 6 Hz.

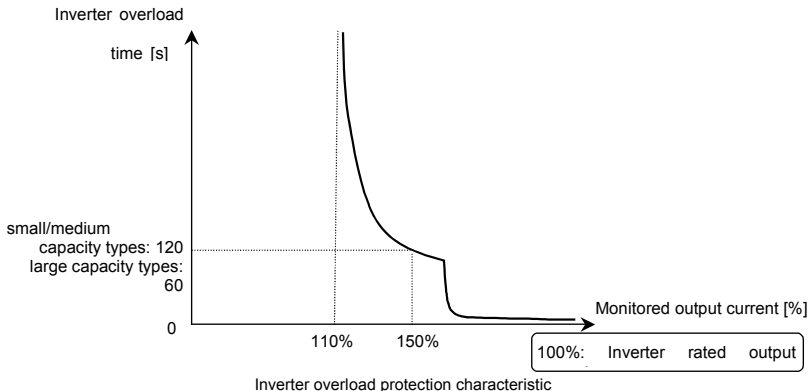
2) Motor 150%-overload time limit **F607**

Parameter **F607** is used to set the time elapsed before the motor trips under a load of 150% (overload trip  $\sigma L 2$ ) within a range of 10 to 2400 seconds.

3) Inverter overload characteristics

Set to protect the inverter itself. The setting of this parameter cannot be turned off.

When an inverter overload trip ( $\sigma L 1$ ) operates, operation can be improved by lowering stall operating level **F601**, or increasing acceleration time **RCC** and deceleration time **dEL**.



Note 1: At extremely low speeds of lower than 1 Hz or over 150%, an overload trip ( $\sigma L 1$ ) occurs in a short period of time to protect the inverter.



Note 2: If an inverter overload occurs with the factor default settings, the inverter is set to lower the carrier frequency automatically and overload tripping is ( $\overline{OL}$   $\dagger$ ) controlled. Although noise from the motor increases when the carrier frequency is reduced, there is no effect on performance. When reducing the carrier frequency is undesirable, set parameter  $F315 = 0$ .

#### 4) Electronic thermal memory $F632$

When the power is OFF, it is possible to reset or maintain the overload totaling level.

This parameter's settings are applied both to the motor's electronic thermal memory and the electronic thermal memory for inverter protection.

[Parameters settings]

| Title  | Function                  | Adjustment range        | Standard defaults |
|--------|---------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| $F632$ | Electronic thermal memory | 0: None<br>1: Available | 0                 |

☆ $F632 = 1$  is a function for complying with the U.S. NEC standards.

### 3.6 Preset-speed operation (speeds in 15 steps)

**5r1** - **5r7**: Preset-speed operation frequencies 1-7

**F287** - **F294**: Preset-speed operation frequencies 8-15

- Function  
A maximum of 15 speed steps can be selected just by switching an external contact signal. Multi-speed frequencies can be programmed anywhere from the lower limit frequency  $L_L$  to the upper limit frequency  $U_L$ .

[Setting method]

1) Run/stop

The starting and stopping control is done from the terminal board.

| Title       | Function               | Adjustment range   | Setting value |
|-------------|------------------------|--|---------------|
| <b>EN0d</b> | Command mode selection | 0: Terminal board<br>1: Panel keypad (including remote keypad)<br>2: RS485 communication | 0             |

Note: When switching between preset-speed operation and other speed commands (analog signal, setting dial, communication, etc.), select the frequency setting mode at **EN0d**. → See 3) or 5.4 in E6581595

2) Preset-speed frequency setting

Set the speed (frequency) of the number of steps necessary.

Setting from speed 1 to speed 7

| Title                   | Function                               | Adjustment range   | Standard defaults |
|-------------------------|--|--------------------|-------------------|
| <b>5r1</b> - <b>5r7</b> | Preset-speed operation frequencies 1-7 | $L_L$ - $U_L$ (Hz) | 0.0               |

Setting from speed 8 to speed 15

| Title                     | Function                                | Adjustment range   | Standard defaults |
|---------------------------|---|--------------------|-------------------|
| <b>F287</b> - <b>F294</b> | Preset-speed operation frequencies 8-15 | $L_L$ - $U_L$ (Hz) | 0.0               |

Preset-speed contact input signal example:  $F \ 1 \ 2 \ 7$  (sink/source switching) =  $\square$ : With sink settings  
 O: ON - : OFF (Speed commands other than preset-speed commands are valid when all are OFF)

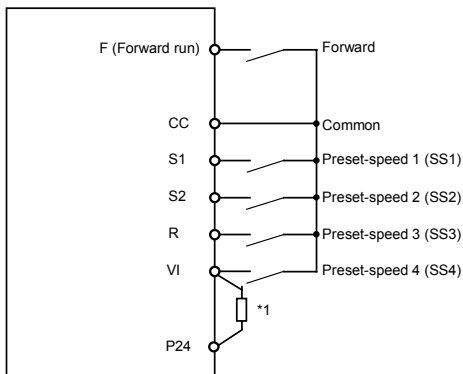
| Terminal | Preset-speed |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----------|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|
|          | 1            | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
| S1-CC    | O            | - | O | - | O | - | O | - | O | -  | O  | -  | O  | -  | O  |
| S2-CC    | -            | O | O | - | - | O | O | - | - | O  | O  | -  | -  | O  | O  |
| R-CC     | -            | - | - | O | O | O | O | - | - | -  | -  | O  | O  | O  | O  |
| VI-CC    | -            | - | - | - | - | - | - | O | O | O  | O  | O  | O  | O  | O  |

★ Terminal functions are as follows.

- Terminal S1 ..... Input terminal function selection 3A (S1)  
 $F \ 1 \ 3 = 1 \ 3$  (Preset-speed command 1: SS1)
- Terminal S2 ..... Input terminal function selection 4A (S2)  
 $F \ 1 \ 4 = 1 \ 2$  (Preset-speed command 2: SS2)
- Terminal R ..... Input terminal function selection 2A (R)  
 $F \ 1 \ 2 = 1 \ 4$  (Preset-speed command 3: SS3)
- Terminal VI ..... Analog/contact input selection (VI)  
 $F \ 1 \ 9 = 2$  (contact input)  
 Input terminal function selection 5 (VI)  
 $F \ 1 \ 5 = 1 \ 6$  (preset-speed command 4: SS4)

★ In the default settings, SS3 and SS4 are not assigned. Assign SS3 and SS4 to R and VI with input terminal function selection. VI terminal must also be set for switching to contact input.

[ Example of a connection diagram ]  
 (with sink settings)



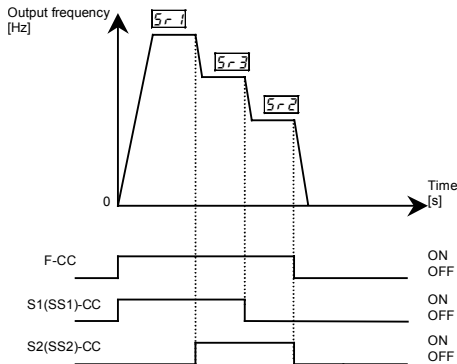
\*1: When VI terminal is used for the contact input terminal, always connect a resistor between VI terminal and P24. For details, see 2.3.2 (page B-9).

3) Using other speed commands with preset-speed command

|  |          |                                |   |                                |  |   |                                |
|--|----------|--------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|--|---|--------------------------------|
| Command mode selection<br><i>C P Q d</i>           |          | 0: Terminal board              |   |                                | 1: Panel keypad (including remote keypad),<br>2: RS485 communication |   |                                |
| Frequency setting<br>mode selection <i>F P Q d</i> |          | 0: Terminal board<br>VI        | 1: Setting dial 1<br>(press in center to<br>save)   | 3: RS485<br>communication      | 0: Terminal block<br>VI  | 1: Setting dial<br>(press in center<br>to record) | 3: RS485<br>communication      |
|  |          | 5: External contact<br>UP/DOWN | 2: Setting dial 2<br>(save even if<br>power is off) |                                | 5: External contact<br>UP/DOWN                                       | 2: Setting dial                                   |                                |
| Preset-speed<br>command                            | Active   | Preset-speed command valid     |   |                                | Terminal<br>command valid  | Setting dial<br>command valid                     | Communication<br>command valid |
|  | Inactive | Terminal<br>command valid      | Setting dial<br>command valid                       | Communication<br>command valid | (The inverter doesn't accept Preset-speed command.)                  |   |                                |

Note) The preset-speed command is always given priority when other speed commands are input at the same time.

An example of three-speed operation with the default settings is shown below. (Frequency settings are required for  $Sr_1$  to  $Sr_3$ )



Example of 3-speed operation

## 4. Setting parameters

### 4.1 Setting and Display Modes

The VF-nC3 has the following three display modes.

#### Standard monitor mode

**The standard inverter mode. This mode is enabled when inverter power goes on.**

This mode is for monitoring the output frequency and setting the frequency reference value. It also displays information about status alarms during running and trips.

- Display of output frequency, etc.

$F \ 7 \ 1 \ 0$  Initial panel display selection

$(F \ 7 \ 2 \ 0)$  Initial remote keypad display selection)

$F \ 7 \ 0 \ 2$  Free unit display scale

- Setting frequency reference values.
- Status alarm

If there is an error in the inverter, the alarm signal and the frequency will flash alternately in the LED display.

$\bar{C}$  : When a current flows at or higher than the overcurrent stall prevention level.

$P$  : When a voltage is generated at or higher than the over voltage stall prevention level.

$L$  : When the cumulative amount of overload reaches 50% or more of the overload trip value, or when the main circuit element temperature reaches the overload alarm level

$H$  : When the overheat protection alarm level is reached

#### Setting monitor mode

**The mode for setting inverter parameters.**

⇒ How to set parameters, refer to Section 4. 2.

There are two parameter read modes. For details on selection and switching of modes, see 4.2.

Easy setting mode : Only the seven most frequently used parameters are displayed.  
Parameters can be registered as necessary. (max. 24 parameters)

Standard setting mode : Both basic and extended all parameters are displayed.

☆ Each press of the EASY key switches between the Easy setting mode and the Standard setting mode.

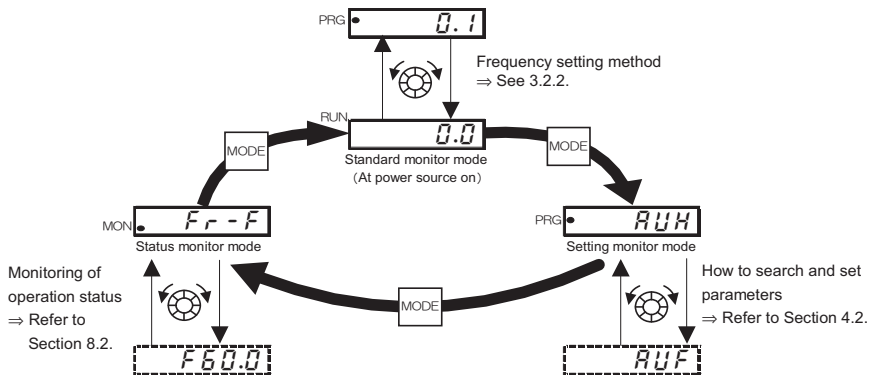
## Status monitor mode

**The mode for monitoring all inverter status.**

Allows monitoring of set frequencies, output current/voltage and terminal information.

⇒ Refer to Section 8.

The inverter can be moved through each of the modes by pressing the MODE key.



## 4.2 How to set parameters

There are two types of setting monitor modes: Easy mode and Standard setting mode. The mode active when power is turned on can be selected at  $P5EL$  (Registered parameter display selection), and the mode can be switched by the EASY key. Note, however, that the switching method differs when only the Easy mode is selected. For details, see 4.5.

Setting dial and panel key operations are as follows:



Turning the setting dial  
Used to select items and incrementing/  
decrementing values. (Note)



Pressing the center of the setting dial  
Used for executing operations and determining  
values. (Note)



Used to select the mode and return to  
the previous menu



Used to switch between the Easy and Standard  
setting modes.  
Each press alternately switches between the two  
modes.

### Easy setting mode

The mode changes to the Easy setting mode when the EASY key is pressed and "EAS" is displayed. Only the most frequently used 7 basic parameters are displayed. (standard default)

Easy setting mode

| Title  | Function                               |
|--------|--|
| $CLD$  | Command mode selection                 |
| $FND$  | Frequency setting mode selection       |
| $RL$   | Acceleration time 1                    |
| $dEL$  | Deceleration time 1                    |
| $tHr$  | Motor overload protection level 1      |
| $FN$   | Meter adjustment                       |
| $P5EL$ | Registered parameter display selection |

☆ In the Easy setting mode, the PRG lamp blinks.

☆ If the EASY key is pressed while the setting dial is being turned, values continue to be incremented or decremented even if you release your finger from the setting dial.

This feature is handy when setting large values.

Note) Of the available parameters, number value parameters ( $RL$  etc.) are reflected in actual operation when the setting dial is turned. Note, however, that the center of the setting dial must be pressed to save values even when the power is turned off.

Note, also, that item selection parameters ( $FND$  etc.) are not reflected in actual operation by just turning the setting dial. To reflect these parameters, press the center of the setting dial.

## Standard setting mode

: The mode changes to the Standard setting mode when the EASY key is pressed and "5 4 d" is displayed.  
Both basic and extended all parameters are displayed.

## Basic parameters

: This parameter is a basic parameter for the operation of the inverter.

⇒ For details, refer to Section 5 in E6581595.

⇒ For parameter tables, refer to Section 11.

## Extended parameters

: The parameters for detailed and special setting.

⇒ For details, refer to Section 6 in E6581595.

⇒ For parameter tables, refer to Section 11.

For reasons of safety, the following parameters have been set up so that they cannot be reprogrammed while the inverter is running.

## [Basic parameters]

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>RU1</i> (Guidance function)                   | <i>FH</i> (Maximum frequency)            |
| <i>RU1</i> (Automatic acceleration/deceleration) | <i>Pt</i> (V/F control mode selection)   |
| <i>RU2</i> (Torque boost setting macro function) | <i>4YP</i> (Default setting)             |
| <i>CR0d*</i> (Command mode selection)            | <i>SEt</i> (Checking the region setting) |
| <i>FR0d*</i> (Frequency setting mode selection)  |  |

## [Basic parameters]

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>F105</i> (Priority selection<br>(Both F and R are ON))                    | <i>F311</i> (Reverse-run prohibition)                               |
| <i>F108 / F110</i> (Always-active function selection<br>1/2)                 | <i>F316</i> (Carrier frequency control mode selection)              |
| <i>F109</i> Analog/logic input selection (VI terminal)                       | <i>F360</i> (PID control)   |
| <i>F111</i> to <i>F115</i> (Input terminal selection 1A to 5)                | <i>F400</i> (Auto-tuning)   |
| <i>F127</i> (Sink/source switching)  | <i>F458</i> (Motor specific coefficient 2)                          |
| <i>F130</i> to <i>F137</i> (Output terminal selection 1A~1B)                 | <i>F480</i> to <i>F495</i> (Motor specific coefficient 7 to 9)      |
| <i>F139</i> (Output terminal logic selection(OUT-NO))                        | <i>F603</i> (Emergency stop selection)                              |
| <i>F144</i> (Factory specific coefficient 1A)                                | <i>F605</i> (Output phase failure detection mode selection)         |
| <i>F151</i> to <i>F156</i> (Input terminal selection 1B~2C)                  | <i>F608</i> (Input phase failure detection mode selection)          |
| <i>F301</i> (Auto-restart control selection)                                 | <i>F613</i> (Detection of output short-circuit during start-up)     |
| <i>F302</i> (Regenerative power ride-through control<br>(Deceleration stop)) | <i>F627</i> (Undervoltage trip/alarm selection)                     |
| <i>F305</i> (Overvoltage limit operation<br>(Slowdown stop mode selection))  | <i>F631</i> (Factory specific coefficient 6A)                       |
| <i>F307</i> (Supply voltage correction<br>(limitation of output voltage))    | <i>F669</i> (Logic output/pulse train output selection<br>(OUT-NO)) |
|  | <i>F681</i> (Analog output signal selection)                        |

\**CR0d* and *FR0d* can be changed during operation by setting *F736=0*.



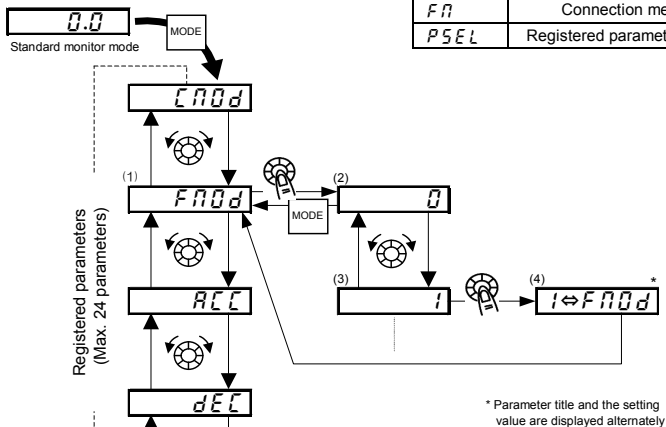
## 4.2.1 Settings in the Easy setting mode

The inverter enters this mode by pressing the MODE key when the Easy setting mode is selected

When you are unsure of something during operation:  
You can return to the Standard monitor mode by pressing the MODE key several times.

Easy setting mode (Default registered parameters)

| Title       | Function                               |
|-------------|--|
| <i>CNOd</i> | Command mode selection                 |
| <i>FNOd</i> | Frequency setting mode selection       |
| <i>ACC</i>  | Acceleration time 1                    |
| <i>dEC</i>  | Deceleration time 1                    |
| <i>tHr</i>  | Motor overload protection level 1      |
| <i>FN</i>   | Connection meter adjustment            |
| <i>PSEL</i> | Registered parameter display selection |



### ■ Setting parameters in the Easy setting mode

- (1) Selects parameter to be changed. (Turn the setting dial.)
- (2) Reads the programmed parameter setting. (Press the center of the setting dial.)
- (3) Change the parameter value. (Turn the setting dial.)
- (4) Press this key to save the change. (Press the center of the setting dial.)

☆ To switch to the Standard setting mode, press the EASY key in the Standard monitor mode. "5 t d" is displayed, and the mode is switched.

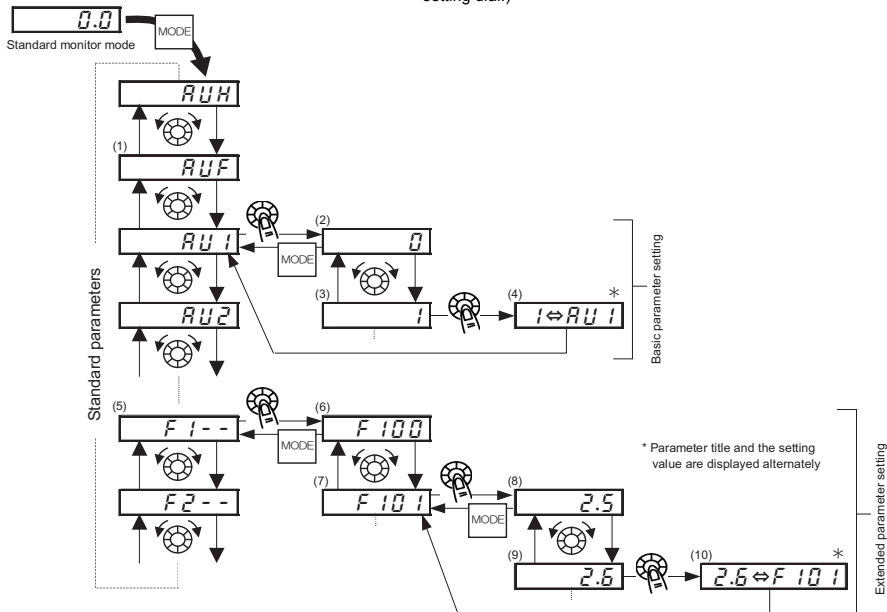
## 4.2.2 Settings in the Standard setting mode

The inverter enters this mode by pressing the MODE key when the Standard setting mode is selected.

When you are unsure of something during operation:  
You can return to the Standard monitor mode by pressing the MODE key several times.

### ■ How to set basic parameters

- (1) Selects parameter to be changed. (Turn the setting dial.)
- (2) Reads the programmed parameter setting. (Press the center of the setting dial.)
- (3) Change the parameter value. (Turn the setting dial.)
- (4) Press this key to save the change. (Press the center of the setting dial.)



☆ To switch to the Easy setting mode, press the EASY key in the Standard monitor mode. **EASY** is displayed, and the mode is switched.

■ How to set extended parameters

Each extended parameter is composed of an "F" suffixed with a 3-digit figure, so first select and read out the heading of the parameter you want "F 1 - -" to "F 9 - -". ("F 1 - -": Parameter starting point is 100, "F 9 - -": Parameter starting point is 800.)

- (5) Select the title of the parameter you want to change. (Turn the setting dial.)
- (6) Press the Enter key to activate the selected parameter. (Press the center of the setting dial.)
- (7) Selects parameter to be changed. (Turn the setting dial.)
- (8) Reads the programmed parameter setting. (Press the center of the setting dial.)
- (9) Change the parameter value. (Turn the setting dial.)
- (10) Press this key to save the change. (Press the center of the setting dial.)

■ Adjustment range and display of parameters

**H I**: An attempt has been made to assign a value that is higher than the programmable range. (Note that the setting of the currently selected parameter may exceed the upper limit as a result of changing other parameters.)

**L O**: An attempt has been made to assign a value that is lower than the programmable range. (Note that the setting of the currently selected parameter may fall below the lower limit as a result of changing other parameters.)

If the above alarm is flashing on and off, values that exceed **H I** or are equal or lower than **L O** cannot be set.

4

## 4.3 Functions useful in searching for a parameter or changing a parameter setting

This section explains functions useful in searching for a parameter or changing a parameter setting. To use these functions, a parameter needs to be selected or set in advance.

### Changed parameters history search (history function) **R U H**

This function automatically searches for the last five parameters whose settings have been changed. To use this function, select the **R U H** parameter. (Any changes are displayed regardless of whether or not they are the same as standard defaults.)

⇒ For more details, refer to Section 5.1 in E6581595.

### Set parameters by purpose (Guidance function) **R U F**

Only parameters required for a special purpose can be called up and set.

To use this function, select parameter **R U F**

⇒ For details, see 5.2 in E6581595.

Reset parameters to default settings **ⓧⓎⓅ**

Use the **ⓧⓎⓅ** parameter to reset all parameters back to their default settings. To use this function, set parameter **ⓧⓎⓅ=3** or **13**.

⇒ For more details, refer to Section 4.3.2.

Call saved customer settings **ⓧⓎⓅ**

Customer settings can be batch-saved and batch-called.

These settings can be used as customer-exclusive default settings.

To use this function, set parameter **ⓧⓎⓅ=7** or **8**.

⇒ For details, see 4.3.2.

Search changed parameters **ⓊⓇⓊ**

Automatically searches for only those parameters that are programmed with values different from the standard default setting. To use this function, select the **ⓊⓇⓊ** parameter.

⇒ For more details, refer to Section 4.3.1.

## 4.3.1 Searching for and resetting changed parameters

**ⓊⓇⓊ** : Automatic edit function

### • Function

Automatically searches for only those parameters that are programmed with values different from the standard default setting and displays them in the **ⓊⓇⓊ**. Parameter setting can also be changed within this group.




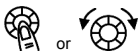








Note 1: If you reset a parameter to its factory default, the parameter will no longer appear in **ⓊⓇⓊ**.

Note 2: It may take several seconds to display changed parameters because all data stored in the user parameter group **ⓊⓇⓊ** is checked against the factory default settings. To cancel a parameter search, press the MODE key.

Note 3: Parameters which cannot be reset to the default setting after setting **ⓧⓎⓅ** to **3** are not displayed.

⇒ Refer to Section 4.3.2 for details.

■ How to search and reprogram parameters

| Panel operation   | LED display  | Operation  |
|---|--|--|
|   | <i>0.0</i>   | Displays the operation frequency (operation stopped).<br>(When standard monitor display selection is set as <i>F 7 1 0=0</i><br>(operation frequency))   |
|    | <i>R U H</i>   | Displays the first basic parameter "History function ( <i>R U H</i> )."  |
|    | <i>U r U</i>   | Turn the setting dial, and select <i>U r U</i> .   |
|    | <i>U - -</i>   | Press the center of the setting dial to enter the user parameter setting change search mode.   |
|    | <i>R C C</i>   | Searches for and displays parameters different to the default settings. Parameters are changed by either pressing the center of the setting dial or turning it to the right. (Turning the setting dial to the left searches for parameter in the reverse direction.)   |
|    | <i>8.0</i>   | Press the center of the setting dial to display set values.  |
|    | <i>5.0</i>   | Turn the setting dial, and change set values.  |
|    | <i>5.0 ⇄ R C C</i>   | Press the center of the setting dial to set values. The parameter name and set value light alternately and are written.  |
|    | <i>U - - F</i><br>( <i>U - - r</i> )   | Use the same steps as those above and turn the setting dial to display parameters to search for or whose settings must be changed, and check or change the parameter settings.   |
|    | <i>U r U</i>   | When <i>U r U</i> appears again, the search is ended.  |
| <br><br> | Parameter display<br>↓<br><i>U r U</i><br>↓<br><i>F r - F</i><br>↓<br><i>0.0</i> | A search can be canceled by pressing the MODE key. Press the key once while the search is underway to return to the display of parameter setting mode. Pressing it while searching returns to the <i>U r U</i> display.<br>After that you can press the MODE key to return to the status monitor mode or the standard monitor mode (display of operation frequency). |

## 4.3.2 Return to default settings

**Ⓛ 4 P** : Default setting

- Function

It is possible to return groups of parameters to their defaults, clear run times, and record/recall set parameters.

| Title | Function        | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|-------|-----------------|---|-----------------|
| Ⓛ 4 P | Default setting | 0: -<br>1: 50Hz default setting<br>2: 60Hz default setting<br>3: Default setting 1 (Initialization)<br>4: Trip record clear<br>5: Cumulative operation time clear<br>6: Initialization of type information<br>7: Save user setting parameters<br>8: Load user setting parameters<br>9: Cumulative fan operation time record clears<br>10-12: -<br>13: Default setting 2 (complete initialization) | 0               |

★ This function will be displayed as 0 during reading on the right. This previous setting is displayed.

Example: **Ⓛ 4 P**

★ Ⓛ 4 P cannot be set during the inverter operating. Always stop the inverter first and then program.

### Programmed value

50 Hz standard setting (Ⓛ 4 P=1)

Setting Ⓛ 4 P to 1 sets the following parameters for base frequency 50 Hz use.

(The setting values of other parameters are not changed.)

|  |        |                               |                          |
|--|--------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| • Max. frequency (F H)                 | : 50Hz | • Upper limit frequency (U L) | : 50Hz                   |
| • Base frequency 1 (u L)               | : 50Hz | • Base frequency 2 (F 1 7 0)  | : 50Hz                   |
| • VI input point 2 frequency (F 2 0 4) | : 50Hz | • Motor rated RPM (F 4 1 7)   | : 1410 min <sup>-1</sup> |

60 Hz standard setting (Ⓛ 4 P=2)

Setting Ⓛ 4 P to 2 sets the following parameters for base frequency 60 Hz use.

(The setting values of other parameters are not changed.)

|  |        |                               |                          |
|--|--------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| • Max. frequency (F H)                 | : 60Hz | • Upper limit frequency (U L) | : 60Hz                   |
| • Base frequency 1 (u L)               | : 60Hz | • Base frequency 2 (F 1 7 0)  | : 60Hz                   |
| • VI input point 2 frequency (F 2 0 4) | : 60Hz | • Motor rated RPM (F 4 1 7)   | : 1710 min <sup>-1</sup> |

Default setting 1 ( $\text{tYP} = 3$ )

Setting  $\text{tYP}$  to 3 will return parameters to the standard values that were programmed at the factory. (Refer to 4.2.6)

☆ When 3 is set, [In Ik] is displayed for a short time after the settings are configured, and then disappears. Then the inverter is in standard motor mode. In this case, the trip history data is cleared.

Be aware that the following parameters do not return to the standard factory settings even if  $\text{tYP}=3$  is set for maintainability. (To initialize all parameters, set  $\text{tYP}=13$ .)

- F05L : Meter selection
- F07 : Meter adjustment gain
- 5E : Check the region settings selection
- F109 : Analog/logic input selection (VI terminal)
- F127 : Sink/source switching
- F470 : VI voltage input bias
- F471 : VI voltage input gain
- F669 : Logic output/pulse train output selection (OUT-NO)
- F681 : Analog output signal selection
- F691 : Analog output inclination characteristic
- F692 : Analog output bias
- F693 : Factory specific coefficient 6D
- F880 : Free memo

Trip record clear ( $\text{tYP} = 4$ )

Setting  $\text{tYP}$  to 4 initializes the past four sets of recorded error history data.

☆ The parameter does not change.

Cumulative operation time clear ( $\text{tYP} = 5$ )

Setting  $\text{tYP}$  to 5 resets the cumulative operation time to the initial value (zero).

Cumulative operation time clear ( $\text{tYP} = 6$ )

Setting  $\text{tYP}$  to 6 clears the trips when an E tYP format error occurs. But if the E tYP displayed, call us.

Save user setting parameters ( $\text{tYP} = 7$ )

Setting  $\text{tYP}$  to 7 saves the current settings of all parameters. (Refer to 4.2.7)

Load user setting parameters ( $\text{tYP} = 8$ )

Setting  $\text{tYP}$  to 8 loads parameter settings to (calls up) those saved by setting  $\text{tYP}$  to 7. (Refer to 4.2.7)

☆ By setting  $\text{tYP}$  to 7 or 8, you can use parameters as your own default parameters.

Cumulative fan operation time record clear ( $\text{tYP} = 9$ )

Setting  $\text{tYP}$  to 9 resets the cumulative operation time to the initial value (zero).

Set this parameter when replacing the cooling fan, and so on

Default setting 2 ( $\text{tYP} = 13$ )

Set  $\text{tYP}$  to 13 to return all parameters to their default settings. (See 4.2.6.)

When 13 is set, [In Ik] is displayed for a short time after the settings are configured, and then disappears. Then setup menu 5E is displayed. After reviewing the setup menu items, make a setup menu selection. In this case, all parameters are returned to their defaults, and the trip history data is cleared. (See 3.1.)

## 4.4 Checking the region settings selection

### **SET**: Checking the region setting

- Function

The region selected on the setup menu can be checked.

Also, the setup menu can be started to change to a different region.

| Title      | Function                    | Adjustment range  | Standard defaults |
|------------|-----------------------------|---|-------------------|
| <b>SET</b> | Checking the region setting | 0: Start setup menu<br>1: Japan (read only)<br>2: North America (read only)<br>3: Asia (read only)<br>4: Europe (read only) | *                 |

\* Depends upon the setup menu settings. 1 to 4 are displayed.

- Content of region settings

The number displayed when parameter **SET** is read indicates which of the following regions was selected on the setup menu.

1: *JP* (Japan) is selected on the setup menu.

2: *USR* (North America) is selected on the setup menu.

3: *RSR* (Asia, Oceania) is selected on the setup menu.

4: *EU* (Europe) is selected on the setup menu.

The setup menu is started by writing **SET**=0.

For details, see 3.1.

Note: 1 to 4 set to parameter **SET** are read-only. Be aware that they cannot be written.



## 4.5 EASY key function

**PSEL** : Registered parameters display selection

**F751** to **F774** : Easy setting mode parameter 1 to 24

• **Function**

It is possible to switch between standard mode and easy setting mode using the EASY key.  
Up to 24 arbitrary parameters can be registered to easy setting mode.

[Parameter setting]

| Title | Function                                | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|-------|---|--|-----------------|
| PSEL  | Registered parameters display selection | 0 : Standard setting mode at power on<br>1 : Easy setting mode at power on<br>2 : Easy setting mode only | 0               |

It is possible to switch between standard mode and easy setting mode using the EASY key.  
The way parameters are read out and displayed varies according to the mode selected.

### Easy setting mode

Allows pre-registration (easy setting mode parameters) of frequently changed parameters and reading of only registered parameters (maximum of 24 types).

### Standard setting mode

Standard setting mode in which all parameters are read out.

[How to read out parameters]

To enter the setting monitor mode, switch to the setting monitor mode using the EASY key, and then press the MODE key.

Turn the setting dial to read the parameter.

The relation between the parameter and the mode selected is shown below.

**PSEL**=0

\* When the power is turned on, the inverter is in standard mode. Press the EASY key to switch to easy setting mode.

**PSEL**=1

\* When the power is turned on, the inverter is in easy setting mode. Press the EASY key to switch to standard mode.

**PSEL**=2

\* Always in easy setting mode.

[How to select parameters]

In easy setting mode, only parameters registered to parameters 1 to 24 are displayed in order of registration.  
The values of the default settings are shown in the table below.

[Parameter setting]

| Title      | Function                           | Adjustment range | Default setting      |
|------------|------------------------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| F 751      | Easy setting mode parameter 1      | 0-999            | 3 (CND)              |
| F 752      | Easy setting mode parameter 2      | 0-999            | 4 (FND)              |
| F 753      | Easy setting mode parameter 3      | 0-999            | 9 (RCC)              |
| F 754      | Easy setting mode parameter 4      | 0-999            | 10 (dEL)             |
| F 755      | Easy setting mode parameter 5      | 0-999            | 600 (LHR)            |
| F 756      | Easy setting mode parameter 6      | 0-999            | 6 (FR)               |
| F 757<br>~ | Easy setting mode parameter 7<br>~ | 0-999            | 999<br>(No function) |
| F 773      | Easy setting mode parameter 23     |                  |                      |
| F 774      | Easy setting mode parameter 24     | 0-999            | 50 (PEL)             |

Note: If any number other than communication numbers is specified, it is regarded as 999 (no function assigned).

## 5. Main parameters

Before you operate the inverter, the parameters that you must first program are the basic parameters.

### 5.1 Searching for changes using the history function (*RUH*)

***RUH*** : History function








History function (*RUH*):

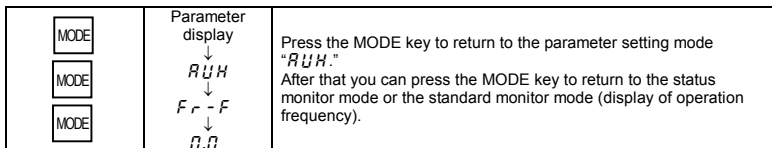
Automatically searches for 5 latest parameters that are programmed with values different from the standard default setting and displays them in the *RUH*. Parameter setting can also be changed within this group *RUH*.

Notes on operation

- If no history information is stored, this parameter is skipped and the next parameter "*RUH*" is displayed.
- *HEAd* and *ENd* are added respectively to the first and last parameters in a history of changes.

#### ■ How to use the history function

| Operation panel action  | LED display                   | Operation  |
|---|-------------------------------|--|
|   | 0.0                           | Displays the operation frequency (operation stopped).<br>(When standard monitor display selection <i>F7ID=0</i> [Operation frequency])         |
|    | <i>RUH</i>                    | The first basic parameter " <i>RUH</i> " (history function) is displayed.  |
|    | <i>ACC</i>                    | The parameter that was set or changed last is displayed.   |
|    | 8.0                           | Press the center of the setting dial to display the set value.   |
|    | 5.0                           | Turn the setting dial to change the set value.   |
|  | 5.0 ↔ <i>ACC</i>              | Press the center of the setting dial to save the changed value. The parameter name and the programmed value will flash on and off alternately. |
|  | ****                          | Turn the dial as described above to search for and display changed parameters to check and change the settings.                                |
|  | <i>HEAd</i><br>( <i>ENd</i> ) | <i>HEAd</i> : First historic record<br><i>ENd</i> : Last historic record   |



Note: The following parameters are not displayed in this auh, even if they are the most recent changes.

*FL* (Operation frequency of operation panel), *RUH* (Guidance function), *RU1* (Automatic acceleration/deceleration), *RU2* (Torque boost setting macro function), *UP* (Default setting), *SE* (Checking the region setting), *F700* (Prohibition of change of parameter settings)

## 5.2 Setting a parameter using the guidance function (*RUH*)

***RUH*** : Guidance function

Guidance function (*RUH*):











The guidance function refers to the special function of calling up only functions necessary to set up the inverter in response to the user's needs. When a purpose-specific guidance is selected, a group of parameters needed for the specified application (function) is formed and the inverter is switched automatically to the mode of setting the group of parameters selected. You can set up the inverter easily by simply setting the parameters in the group one after another. The guidance function (*RUH*) provides four purpose-specific guidance.

| Title      | Function          | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|------------|-------------------|--|-----------------|
| <i>RUH</i> | Guidance function | 0:-<br>1: - Note 1<br>2: Preset speed guidance<br>3: Analog input signal guidance<br>4: Motor switching guidance<br>5: Motor constant setting guidance | 0               |

Note: 1 is for manufacturer's settings. Do not change the settings.

■ How to use the guidance function

Here are the steps to follow to set parameters, using the guidance function. (When the basic setting guidance (*RUF*) is set to 1)

| Operation panel action  | LED display  | Operation   |
|---|--|---|
|   | 0.0  | Displays the operation frequency (operation stopped).<br>(When standard monitor display selection <i>F 7 1G=0</i> is set to 0 [operation frequency]).                 |
|    | <i>R U H</i>   | The first basic parameter "History ( <i>R U H</i> )" is displayed.  |
|    | <i>R U F</i>   | Turn the setting dial to select the guidance function ( <i>R U F</i> ).   |
|    | 0  | Press the center of the setting dial to display 0.  |
|    | 2  | Turn the setting dial to change to the purpose-specific guidance setting value "2".   |
|    | <i>C n d</i>   | Press the center of the setting dial to display the purpose-specific guidance parameter group (refer to table below).   |
|    | ****   | After moving to the purpose-specific guidance parameter group, use the setting dial to change the parameters.   |
|    | <i>E n d</i>   | <i>E n d</i> is dialyzed on completion of the setting of the guidance parameter group.  |
| <br><br> | Display of parameter<br>↓<br><i>R U F</i><br>↓<br><i>F r - F</i><br>↓<br>0.0 | Press the MODE key to exit the guidance parameter group.<br>By pressing the MODE key, you can return to the default monitoring mode (display of operation frequency). |

If there is anything you do not understand during this operation, press the MODE key several times to start over from the step of *R U H* display.

*H E R d* or *E n d* is affixed respectively to the first or last parameter in each guidance wizard parameter group.

Table of parameters that can be changed using the guidance function

| Preset-speed setting<br>guidance<br>RUF=2 | Analog input operation<br>guidance<br>RUF=3 | Motor 2 switching operation<br>guidance<br>RUF=4 | Motor constant setting<br>guidance<br>RUF=5 |
|---|---|--|---|
| Cn0d                                      | Cn0d  | F111   | Pt  |
| Fn0d                                      | Fn0d  | F112   | uL  |
| RCC                                       | RCC   | F113   | uLu   |
| dEC                                       | dEC   | F114   | F405  |
| FH  | FH  | uL   | F415  |
| UL  | UL  | uLu  | F417  |
| F109                                      | LL  | ub   | F400  |
| F111                                      | F109  | F415   |   |
| F112                                      | F201  | tHr  |   |
| F113                                      | F202  | F601   |   |
| F114                                      | F203  | RCC  |   |
| F115                                      | F204  | dEC  |   |
| Sr1                                       |   | F170   |   |
| Sr2                                       |   | F171   |   |
| Sr3                                       |   | F172   |   |
| Sr4                                       |   | F173   |   |
| Sr5                                       |   | F185   |   |
| Sr6                                       |   | F500   |   |
| Sr7                                       |   | F501   |   |
| F287                                      |   |  |   |
| F288                                      |   |  |   |
| F289                                      |   |  |   |
| F290                                      |   |  |   |
| F291                                      |   |  |   |
| F292                                      |   |  |   |
| F293                                      |   |  |   |
| F294                                      |   |  |   |

## 5.3 Setting acceleration/deceleration time

**$RU1$**  : Automatic acceleration/deceleration

**$ACC$**  : Acceleration time 1

**$DEC$**  : Deceleration time 1

- Function

- 1) For acceleration time 1  $ACC$  programs the time that it takes for the inverter output frequency to go from 0Hz to maximum frequency  $FH$ .
- 2) For deceleration time 1  $DEC$  programs the time that it takes for the inverter output frequency to go from maximum frequency  $FH$  to 0Hz.

### 5.3.1 Automatic acceleration/deceleration

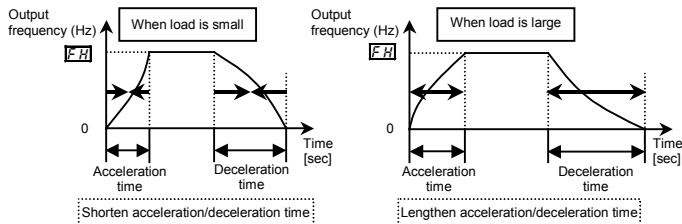
This automatically adjusts acceleration and deceleration time in line with load size.

**$RU1$**  = 1

\* Adjusts the acceleration/deceleration time automatically within the range of 1/8 to 8 times as long as the time set with the  $ACC$  or  $DEC$ , depending on the current rating of the inverter.

**$RU1$**  = 2

\* Automatically adjusts speed during acceleration only. During deceleration, speed is not adjusted automatically but reduced at the rate set with  $DEC$ .



Set  $RU1$  (automatic acceleration/deceleration) to 1 or 2.






[Parameter setting]

| Title | Function                            | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|-------|-------------------------------------|---|-----------------|
| $RU1$ | Automatic acceleration/deceleration | 0: Disabled (manual)<br>1: Automatic<br>2: Automatic (only at acceleration) | 0               |

★ When automatically setting acceleration/deceleration time, always change the acceleration/deceleration time so that it conforms to the load. The acceleration/deceleration time changes constantly with load fluctuations. For inverters that requires a fixed acceleration/deceleration time, use the manual settings ( $ACC$ ,  $DEC$ ).

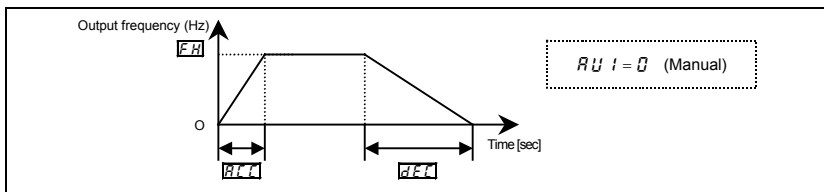
- ★ Setting acceleration/deceleration time ( $R\check{L}\check{L}.dE\check{L}$ ) in conformance with mean load allows optimum setting that conforms to further changes in load.
- ★ Use this parameter after actually connecting the motor.
- ★ When the inverter is used with a load that fluctuates considerably, it may fail to adjust the acceleration or deceleration time in time, and therefore may be tripped.
- ★ Do not use  $R\check{U}i=i$  when using a brake module (optional).

[Methods of setting automatic acceleration/deceleration]

| Operation panel action  | LED display                     | Operation  |
|---|---------------------------------|--|
|   | 0.0                             | Displays the operation frequency.<br>(When standard monitor display selection $F7i0$ is set to 0 [Operation frequency])        |
|  | $R\check{U}H$                   | The first basic parameter " $R\check{U}H$ " (history function) is displayed.   |
|  | $R\check{U}i$                   | Turn the setting dial to the right to change the parameter to $R\check{U}i$ .  |
|  | 0                               | Parameter values can be read by pressing the center of the setting dial.   |
|  | $i$                             | Turn the setting dial to the right to change the parameter to $i$ or $2$ .   |
|  | $i \leftrightarrow R\check{U}i$ | Press the center of the setting dial to save the changed parameter. $R\check{U}i$ and the parameter are displayed alternately. |

### 5.3.2 Manually setting acceleration/deceleration time

Set acceleration time from 0.0 (Hz) operation frequency to maximum frequency  $FH$  and deceleration time as the time when operation frequency goes from maximum frequency  $FH$  to 0.0 (Hz).



[Parameter setting]

| Title                 | Function            | Adjustment range | Default setting |
|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| $R\check{L}\check{L}$ | Acceleration time 1 | 0.0-3000 sec.    | 10.0            |
| $dE\check{L}$         | Deceleration time 1 | 0.0-3000 sec.    | 10.0            |

Note: When the acceleration/deceleration time is set to 0.0 seconds, the inverter accelerates and decelerates 0.05 seconds.



- ★ If the programmed value is shorter than the optimum acceleration/deceleration time determined by load conditions, overcurrent stall or overvoltage stall function may make the acceleration/deceleration time longer than the programmed time. If an even shorter acceleration/deceleration time is programmed, there may be an overcurrent trip or overvoltage trip for inverter protection. (For further details, see 13.1)

## 5.4 Increasing starting torque

### **$\overline{R}U2$** : Torque boost setting macro function

- Function  
Simultaneously switches inverter output (V/F) control and programs motor constants automatically (On-line automatic-tuning function) to improve torque generated by the motor. This parameter integrates the setting of special V/F control selection such as vector control.

| Title            | Function                            | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|---|-----------------|
| $\overline{R}U2$ | Torque boost setting macro function | 0: Disabled<br>1: Automatic torque boost + auto-tuning<br>2: Vector control + auto-tuning<br>3: Energy saving + auto-tuning | 0               |

Note: Parameter displays on the right always return to 0 after setting. The previous setting is displayed on the left.

Ex.  $\overline{1}0$

#### Caution:

When the torque boost setting macro function  $\overline{R}U2$  is set, look at the motor's name plate and set the following parameters.

- $\overline{u}L$  : Base frequency 1 (rated frequency)
- $\overline{u}L\overline{u}$  : Base frequency voltage 1 (rated voltage)
- $\overline{F}405$  : Motor rated capacity
- $\overline{F}415$  : Motor rated current
- $\overline{F}417$  : Motor rated speed

Set the other motor constants as necessary.

### 1) Increasing torque automatically according to the load

$\overline{R}U2$  is set to 1 (automatic torque boost + auto-tuning)

When torque boost setting macro function control  $\overline{R}U2$  is set to 1 (automatic torque boost + auto-tuning), the inverter keeps track of the load current in any speed range and automatically adjusts the output voltage to ensure enough torque and stable operation.

Note 1: The same characteristic can be obtained by setting the V/F control mode selection parameter  $P\text{L}$  to 2 (automatic torque boost control) and the auto-tuning parameter  $F400$  to 2 (auto-tuning).  
 ⇒ See 5.1.1 and 6.14

Note 2: Setting  $RU2$  to 1 automatically programs  $P\text{L}$  to 2.

## 2) When using vector control (increasing starting torque and high-precision operations)

$RU2$  is set to 2 (vector control + auto-tuning)

Setting torque boost setting macro function control  $RU2$  to 2 (vector control + auto-tuning) provides high starting torque bringing out the maximum in motor characteristics from the low-speed range. This suppresses changes in motor speed caused by fluctuations in load to provide high precision operation. This is an optimum feature for elevators and other load transporting machinery.

Note 1: The same characteristic can be obtained by setting the V/F control mode selection parameter  $P\text{L}$  to 3 (vector control) and the auto-tuning parameter  $F400$  to 2 (auto-tuning).  
 ⇒ See 5.1.1 and 6.14

Note 2: Setting  $RU2$  to 2 automatically programs  $P\text{L}$  to 3.

## 3) Energy-saving operation






$RU2$  is set to 3 (energy saving + auto-tuning)

When torque boost setting macro function control  $RU2$  is set to 3 (energy saving + auto-tuning), the inverter always passes a current appropriate to the load for energy saving.

Note 1: The same characteristic can be obtained by setting the V/F control mode selection parameter  $P\text{L}$  to 4 (automatic energy saving) and the auto-tuning parameter  $F400$  to 2 (auto-tuning).

Note 2: When  $RU2$  is set to 3,  $P\text{L}$  is automatically set to 4.

[Example of parameter setting]

| Operation panel action  | LED display | Operation   |
|---|-------------|---|
|   | 0. 0        | Displays the operation frequency. (Perform during operation stopped.)<br>(When standard monitor display selection $F710$ is set to 0 (Operation frequency))                         |
|    | $RUH$       | The first basic parameter " $RUH$ " (history function) is displayed.  |
|   | $RU2$       | Turn the setting dial to the right to change the parameter to $RU2$ (torque boost setting macro function).  |
|  | 0 0         | Parameter values can be read by pressing the center of the setting dial.  |
|  | 0 3         | Turn the setting dial to the right to change the parameter to 3 (energy saving + auto-tuning). (Right side is the setting value, left side is the history of the previous setting.) |
|  | 0 3 ⇄ $RU2$ | Press the center of the setting dial to save the changed parameter. $RU2$ and the parameter are displayed alternately.  |

If vector control cannot be programmed...

First read the precautions about vector control in 5.11, 6.

- 1) If the desired torque cannot be obtained ⇒ see 6.14 Selection 2
- 2) If auto-tuning error "E<sub>Ln</sub>" appears ⇒ see 6.14 Selection 3

■  **$R U \bar{2}$**  (Torque boost setting macro function) and  **$P \bar{L}$**  (V/F control mode selection)

Automatic torque boost is the parameter for setting V/F control mode selection ( $P \bar{L}$ ) and auto-tuning ( $F 4 \bar{0} \bar{0}$ ) together. That is why all parameters related to change automatically when  $R U \bar{2}$  is changed.

| $R U \bar{2}$ |                                      | Automatically programmed parameters |   |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
|               |                                      | $P \bar{L}$                         | $F 4 \bar{0} \bar{0}$                       |
| $\bar{0}$     | Displays $\bar{0}$ after resetting   | -                                   | Check the programmed value of $P \bar{L}$ . |
| $\bar{1}$     | Automatic torque boost + auto-tuning | $\bar{2}$                           | Automatic torque boost                      |
| $\bar{2}$     | Vector control + auto-tuning         | $\bar{3}$                           | Sensorless vector control                   |
| $\bar{3}$     | Energy saving + auto-tuning          | $\bar{4}$                           | Energy saving                               |

5

4) Increasing torque manually (V/F constant control)

This is the setting of constant torque characteristics that are suited for such things as conveyors. It can also be used to manually increase starting torque.

If V/F constant control is programmed after changing  $R U \bar{2}$ ,

Set V/F control mode selection  $P \bar{L} = \bar{0}$  (V/F constant).

⇒ see 5.11

Note 1: To further increase torque, increase the torque boost amount  $1 \bar{u} \bar{b}$ .

How to set the torque boost amount  $1 \bar{u} \bar{b}$

⇒ see 5.12

Note 2: V/F control selection  $P \bar{L} = 1$  (variable torque) is an effective setting for load such as fans and pumps.

⇒ see 5.11

## 5.5 Selection of operation mode

**Cmd**: Command mode selection

**Fnd**: Frequency setting mode selection

- Function

These parameters are used to specify which input device (operation panel, terminal board, or RS485 communication) takes priority in entering an operation stop command or frequency setting command (terminal block VI, setting dial 1 (storing by pressing center of setting dial), RS485 communication, or UP/DOWN from external contact).

### <Command mode selection>

| Title      | Function               | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|------------|------------------------|--|-----------------|
| <b>Cmd</b> | Command mode selection | 0: Terminal board<br>1: Panel keypad (including remote keypad)<br>2: RS-485 communications | 1               |

#### Programmed value

**0**: Terminal board operation ON and OFF of an external signal Runs and stops operation.

**1**: Panel keypad operation Press the RUN and STOP keys on the panel keypad to run and stop. Operation can also be done from the extension panel.

**2**: RS485 communication Run/stop operations from an external device.

- \* There are two types of function: the function that conforms to commands selected by **Cmd**, and the function that conforms only to commands from the terminal board. See the table of input terminal function selection in 11.6.
- \* When priority is given to commands from a linked computer or terminal board, they have priority over the setting of **Cmd**.

### <Frequency setting mode selection>

| Title      | Function                         | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|------------|----------------------------------|---|-----------------|
| <b>Fnd</b> | Frequency setting mode selection | 0: Terminal board VI<br>1: Setting dial 1 (press in center to save)<br>2: Setting dial 2 (saved even if power is off)<br>3: RS485 communication<br>4: -<br>5: UP/DOWN from external logic input | 2               |

[Programmed value]

- 0**: VI input A frequency command is set by means of external signals (VI terminal: 0 - 5/0 - 10 Vdc, or 0 (4) - 20 mAdc).
- 1**: Setting dial 1 Frequencies are set by rotating the setting dial on the inverter. Press the center of the setting dial to save the frequency setting value.
- 2**: Setting dial 2 Frequencies are set by rotating the setting dial on the inverter. Like the position of notches in a volume knob, the frequency setting value at the position of the notch is saved.
- 3**: RS485 communication Frequencies are set by commands from an external control unit.
- 5**: UP/DOWN frequency Frequencies are set by up/down commands from a terminal.

- ★ No matter what value the command mode selection  $\text{CND}$  and the frequency setting mode selection  $\text{FND}$  are set to the control input terminal functions described below are always in operative state.
  - Reset terminal (valid only for tripping if set for programmable input terminal function)
  - Standby terminal (when programmed by programmable input terminal functions).
  - External input tripping stop terminal command (when so set using the programmable input terminal function)
  - Coast stop command terminal (if set for programmable input terminal function)
- ★ To make changes in the command mode selection  $\text{CND}$  and the frequency setting mode selection 1  $\text{FND}$ , first stop the inverter temporarily.  
(Can be changed while in operation when  $\text{F35}$  is set to 0.)
- ★ Priority commands from communications or terminal blocks are given priority over  $\text{FND}$ .

## ■ Preset-speed operation

$\text{CND}$ : Set to 0 (Terminal board).

$\text{FND}$ : Valid in all setting values.

## ■ Input terminal settings

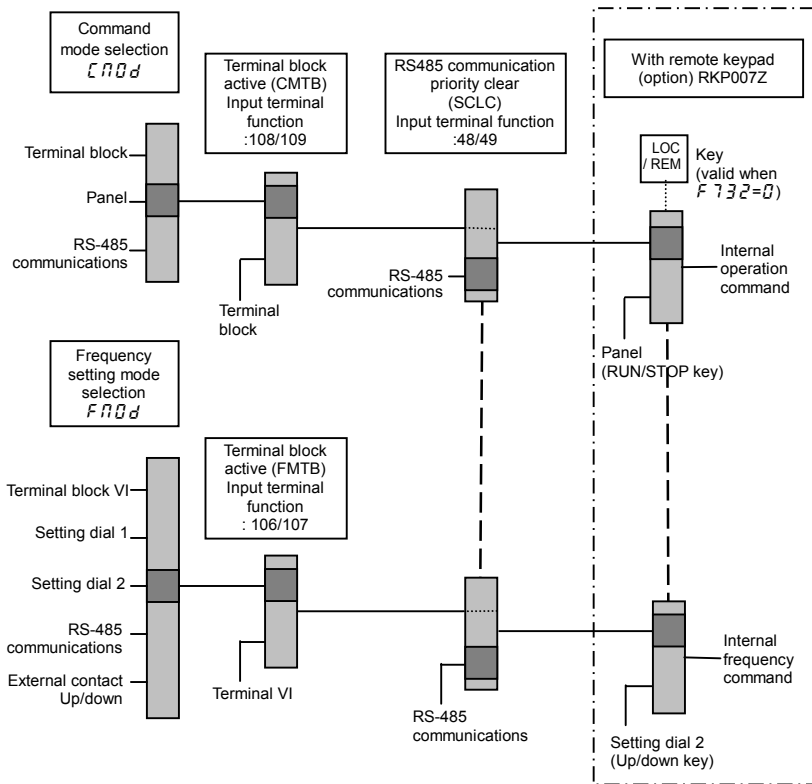
Assign the following functions to the input terminal to allow switching of the frequency command by turning the terminal ON/OFF.

|     | Input terminal function               | ON  | OFF                   |
|-----|---------------------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| 48  | Switching from communication to local | Valid running via communication:<br>Local ( $\text{FND}$ , $\text{CND}$ settings) | Communication         |
| 106 | Frequency command terminal block      | Terminal block (VI) valid   | $\text{FND}$ settings |

Note 1: Each of the following numbers (49, 107) are reverse signals.

■ Example of run and frequency command switching

Command mode and frequency setting mode switching



5

## 5.6 Meter setting and adjustment

**FMSL**: Meter selection

**FN**: Meter adjustment

For details, see 3.4.

## 5.7 Forward/reverse run selection (Panel keypad)

**Fr**: Forward/reverse run selection (Panel keypad)

- Function  
Program the direction of rotation of the motor when the running and stopping are made using the RUN key and STOP key on the operation panel.  
Valid when **CPD** (command mode) is set to **1** (operation panel).

### Parameter setting

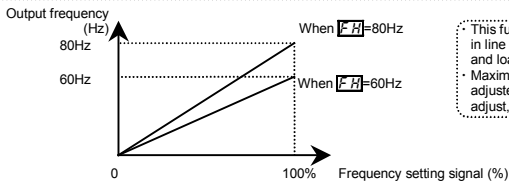
| Title     | Function  | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|-----------|---|--|-----------------|
| <b>Fr</b> | Forward/reverse run selection<br>(Panel keypad) | 0: Forward run<br>1: Reverse run<br>2: Forward run (F/R switching on remote keypad)<br>3: Reverse run (F/R switching on remote keypad) | 0               |

- ★ When **Fr** is set to **2**, the standard monitor is displayed, pressing the FWD/REV key on the extension panel (option RKP007Z) changes the direction of rotation from reverse to forward after displaying the message **Fr - r**.  
Pressing the FWD/REV key again changes the direction of rotation from reverse to forward after displaying the message **Fr - F**.
- ★ Check the direction of rotation on the status monitor. For monitoring, see 8.1  
**Fr - F**: Forward run  
**Fr - r**: Reverse run
- ★ When the F and R terminals are used for switching between forward and reverse rotation from the terminal board, the **Fr** forward/reverse run selection parameter is rendered invalid.  
Short across the F-CC terminals: forward rotation  
Short across the R-CC terminals: reverse rotation.
- ★ The inverter was factory-configured by default so that shorting terminals F-CC and terminals R-CC simultaneously would cause the motor to slow down to a stop.  
Using the parameter **F105**, however, you can select between forward run and reverse run.

## 5.8 Maximum frequency

**$FH$** : Maximum frequency

- Function
  - 1) Programs the range of frequencies output by the inverter (maximum output values).
  - 2) This frequency is used as the reference for acceleration/deceleration time.



This function determines the value in line with the ratings of the motor and load.  
 Maximum frequency cannot be adjusted during operation. To adjust, first stop the inverter.

- ★ If  $FH$  is increased, adjust the upper limit frequency  $UL$  as necessary.

### Parameter setting

| Title | Function          | Adjustment range | Default setting |
|-------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| $FH$  | Maximum frequency | 30.0-400.0 (Hz)  | *               |

\* Depends upon the setup menu settings. 50.0, 60.0, or 80.0 (Hz) is selected.



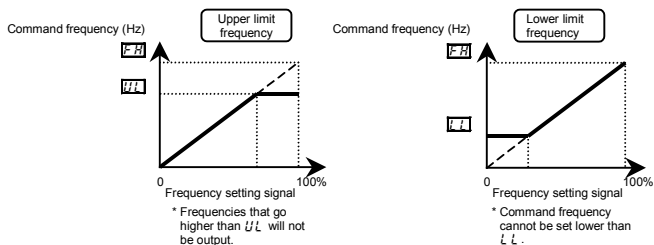
## 5.9 Upper limit and lower limit frequencies

$\overline{UL}$ : Upper limit frequency

$\underline{LL}$ : Lower limit frequency

- Function

Programs the lower limit frequency that determines the lower limit of the output frequency and the upper limit frequency that determines the upper limit of that frequency.



### ■ Parameter setting

| Title            | Function              | Adjustment range           | Factory default setting |
|------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| $\overline{UL}$  | Upper limit frequency | 0.5 - $FH$ (Hz)            | *                       |
| $\underline{LL}$ | Lower limit frequency | 0.0 - $\overline{UL}$ (Hz) | 0.0                     |

\* Depends upon the setup menu settings. 50.0, or 60.0 (Hz) is selected.

Note: Do not set a value 10x larger than  $\underline{LL}$  (base frequency 1) and  $F170$  (base frequency 2) for  $\overline{UL}$ . If a large number is set, the output frequency can only be output at 10 times of minimum value  $\underline{LL}$  and  $F170$ .

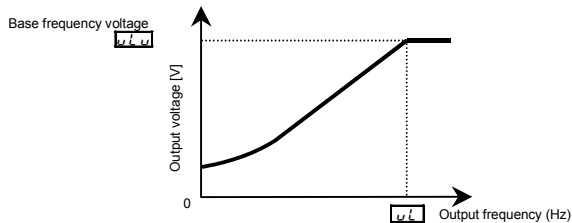
## 5.10 Base frequency

$\omega \dot{\omega}$ : Base frequency 1

$\omega \dot{\omega} \omega$ : Base frequency voltage 1

- Function  
Sets the base frequency and the base frequency voltage in conformance with load specifications or the Base frequency.

Note: This is an important parameter that determines the constant torque control area.



| Title                        | Function                | Adjustment range | Factory default setting |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| $\omega \dot{\omega}$        | Base frequency 1        | 20.0-400.0 (Hz)  | *                       |
| $\omega \dot{\omega} \omega$ | Base frequency voltage1 | 50-330 (V)       | *                       |

\* Depends upon the setup menu settings. 50.0 or 60.0 (Hz) is selected for  $\omega \dot{\omega}$ , and 200, 220, or 230 (V) is selected for  $\omega \dot{\omega} \omega$ .

## 5.11 Selecting control mode

**P<sub>Ł</sub>**: V/F control mode selection

- Function  
With VF-nC3, the V/F controls shown below can be selected.
  - V/F constant
  - Variable torque
  - Automatic torque boost control \*1
  - Vector control \*1
  - Energy saving \*1
- (\*1) Parameter setting macro torque boost: *RUZ* parameter can automatically set this parameter and auto-tuning at a time.

### Parameter setting

| Title                | Function                   | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|----------------------|----------------------------|---|-----------------|
| <i>P<sub>Ł</sub></i> | V/F control mode selection | 0: V/F constant<br>1: Variable torque<br>2: Automatic torque boost control<br>3: Vector control<br>4: Energy-saving | 0               |






Note: *P<sub>Ł</sub>* (V/F control mode selection) is valid only for the first motor.

Changes to "V/F constant control" when switching to the second motor, regardless of the *P<sub>Ł</sub>* setting.

Steps in setting are as follows

(In this example, the V/F control mode selection parameter *P<sub>Ł</sub>* is set to 3 (Vector control).)

[Setting V/F control mode selection to 3 (sensorless vector control)]

| Operation panel action  | LED display              | Operation   |
|---|--------------------------|---|
|   | 0. 0                     | Displays the operation frequency. (Perform during operation stopped.)<br>(When standard monitor display selection <i>F 7 iQ</i> is set to 0<br>[Operation frequency]) |
|    | <i>RUH</i>               | The first basic parameter " <i>RUH</i> " (history function) is displayed.   |
|    | <i>P<sub>Ł</sub></i>     | Rotate the settings dial to the right, and change the parameter to <i>P<sub>Ł</sub></i><br>(control selection).   |
|   | 0                        | Parameter values can be read by pressing the center of the setting dial (the default setting is 0:V/F constant).  |
|  | 3                        | Rotate the settings dial to the right, and change the parameter to 3<br>(vector control).   |
|  | 3 ⇔ <i>P<sub>Ł</sub></i> | Press the center of the setting dial to save the changed parameter.<br><i>P<sub>Ł</sub></i> and parameter set value "3" are displayed alternately.                    |

## Caution:

When the V/F control mode selection  $P_{L}$  is set to  $\bar{2}$ : Automatic torque boost control,  $\bar{3}$ : Vector control, or  $\bar{4}$ : Energy-saving, be sure to set the following parameters according to the motor's name plate.

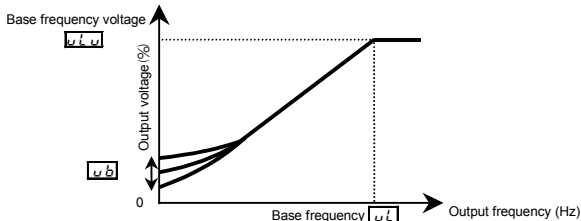
- $\omega_{L}$  : Base frequency 1 (rated frequency)
- $\omega_{L} v$  : Base frequency voltage 1 (rated voltage)
- $F_{405}$  : Motor rated capacity
- $F_{415}$  : Motor rated current
- $F_{417}$  : Motor rated speed

Set the other motor constants as necessary

## 1) Constant torque characteristics

Setting of V/F control mode selection  $P_{L}$  to  $\bar{0}$  (V/F constant)

This is applied to loads with equipment like conveyors and cranes that require the same torque at low speeds as at rated speeds.



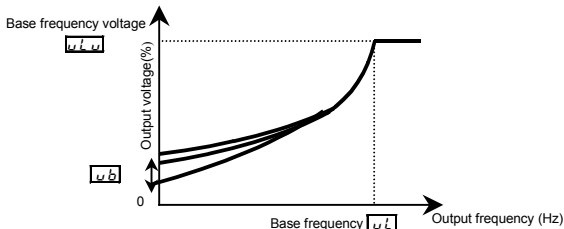
\* To increase the torque further, increase the setting value of the manual torque boost  $\omega_b$ .

⇒ For more details, see 5.12.

## 2) Setting for fans and pumps

Setting of V/F control mode selection  $P_{L}$  to  $\bar{1}$  (variable torque)

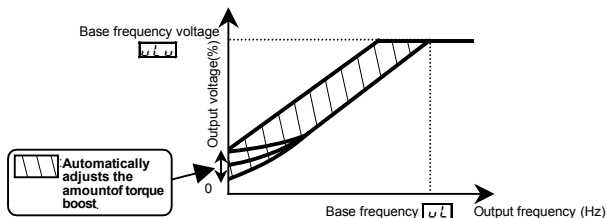
This is appropriate for load characteristics of such things as fans, pumps and blowers in which the torque in relation to load rotation speed is proportional to its square.



## 3) Increasing starting torque

Setting of V/F control mode selection  $P\ 1$  to  $2$  (automatic torque boost control)

Detects load current in all speed ranges and automatically adjusts voltage output (torque boost) from inverter. This gives steady torque for stable runs.



Note: This control system can oscillate and destabilize runs depending on the load. In this case, set V/F mode selection  $P\ 1$  to  $0$  (V/F constant) and increase manual torque boost  $u\ b$ .

## ★ Motor constant must be set

If the motor you are using is a 4P Toshiba standard motor and if it has the same capacity as the inverter, there is basically no need to set the motor constant. In any other case, set the following parameters according to the motor's name plate.

$u\ L$  (base frequency 1),  $u\ L\ u$  (base frequency voltage 1),  $F\ 4\ 0\ 5$  (motor rated capacity),  $F\ 4\ 1\ 5$  (motor rated current),  $F\ 4\ 1\ 7$  (motor rated speed)

Be sure to set  $F\ 4\ 1\ 5$  (rated current of motor) and  $F\ 4\ 1\ 7$  (rated speed of motor) correctly, as specified on the motor's nameplate. For the setting of  $F\ 4\ 1\ 5$  (no-load current of motor), refer to the motor test report.

There are three procedures for setting the other motor constants.

- 1) Auto torque boost and a motor constant (auto-tuning) can be set at once.  
To do so, set the basic parameter  $R\ U\ 2$  to  $1$ . ⇒ For details, see 1 in 5.2.
- 2) The motor constant can be automatically set (auto-tuning).  
Set the extended parameter  $F\ 4\ 0\ 0$  to  $2$ . ⇒ For details, see 6.14, selection 2.
- 3) Each motor constant can be set individually. ⇒ For details, see 6.14, selection 3.

## 4) Vector control - increasing starting torque and achieving high-precision operation.

Setting of V/F control mode selection  $P\ 1$  to  $3$  (Vector control)

Using sensor-less vector control will provide the highest torque at the low speed ranges.

- (1) Provides large starting torque.
- (2) Effective when stable operation is required to move smoothly up from the low speeds.
- (3) Effective in elimination of load fluctuations caused by motor slippage.

### ★ Motor constant must be set

If the motor you are using is a 4P Toshiba standard motor and if it has the same capacity as the inverter, there is basically no need to set the motor constant. In any other case, set the following parameters according to the motor's name plate.

$\omega L$  (base frequency 1),  $\omega L V$  (base frequency voltage 1),  $F 4 0 5$  (motor rated capacity),  $F 4 1 5$  (motor rated current),  $F 4 1 7$  (motor rated rpm)

Be sure to set  $F 4 1 5$  (rated current of motor) and  $F 4 1 7$  (rated speed of motor) correctly, as specified on the motor's nameplate. For the setting of  $F 4 1 5$  (no-load current of motor), refer to the motor test report. There are three procedures for setting the other motor constants.

- 1) The sensorless vector control and motor constants (auto-tuning) can be set at a time.  
Set the basic parameter  $R U 2$  to  $2$ .  $\Rightarrow$  For details, see 1 in 5.2.
- 2) The motor constant can be automatically set (auto-tuning).  
Set the extended parameter  $F 4 0 0$  to  $2$ .  $\Rightarrow$  For details, see 6.14, selection 2.
- 3) Each motor constant can be set individually.  $\Rightarrow$  For details, see 6.14, selection 3.

## 5) Energy-saving

Setting of V/F control mode selection  $P L$  to 4 (Energy-saving)

Energy can be saved in all speed areas by detecting load current and flowing the optimum current that fits the load.

### ★ Motor constant must be set

If the motor you are using is a 4P Toshiba standard motor and if it has the same capacity as the inverter, there is no need to set the motor constant. In any other case, set the following parameters according to the motor's name plate.

$\omega L$  (base frequency 1),  $\omega L V$  (base frequency voltage 1),  $F 4 0 5$  (motor rated capacity),  $F 4 1 5$  (motor rated current),  $F 4 1 7$  (motor rated rpm)

Be sure to set  $F 4 1 5$  (rated current of motor) and  $F 4 1 7$  (rated speed of motor) correctly, as specified on the motor's nameplate. For the setting of  $F 4 1 5$  (no-load current of motor), refer to the motor test report. There are three procedures for setting the other motor constants.

- 1) Automatic energy-saving operation and a motor constant can be set at once.  
Set the basic parameter  $R U 2$  to  $3$ .  $\Rightarrow$  For details, see 1 in 5.2.
- 2) The motor constant can be automatically set (auto-tuning).  
Set the extended parameter  $F 4 0 0$  to  $2$ .  $\Rightarrow$  For details, see 6.14, selection 2.
- 3) Each motor constant can be set individually.  $\Rightarrow$  For details, see 6.14, selection 3.

## 6) Cautions for vector control

- 1) When performing vector control, look at the motor's name plate and set the following parameters.  
 $\omega L$  (base frequency 1),  $\omega L V$  (base frequency voltage 1),  $F 4 0 5$  (motor rated capacity),  $F 4 1 5$  (motor rated current),  $F 4 1 7$  (motor rated rpm)
- 2) The sensorless vector control exerts its characteristics effectively in frequency areas below the base frequency ( $\omega L$ ). The same characteristics will not be obtained in areas above the base frequency.
- 3) Set the base frequency to anywhere from 40 to 120Hz during vector control ( $P L = 3$ ).

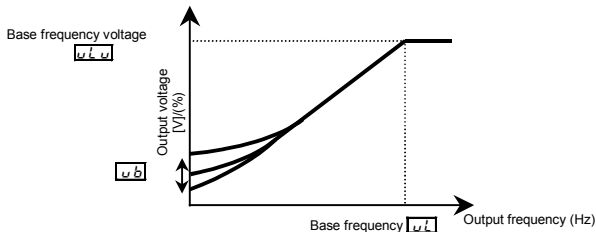
- 4) Use a general purpose squirrel-cage motor with a capacity that is the same as the inverter's rated capacity or one rank below.  
The minimum applicable motor capacity is 0.05kW.
- 5) Use a motor that has 2-8 P.
- 6) Always operate the motor in single operation (one inverter to one motor). Sensorless vector control cannot be used when one inverter is operated with more than one motor.  
When using a combination of several motors, set the V/F constant ( $P \xi = \bar{U}$ ).
- 7) The maximum length of wires between the inverter and motor is 30 meters. If the wires are longer than 30 meters, set standard auto-tuning with the wires connected to improve low-speed torque during sensorless vector control.  
However the effects of voltage drop cause motor-generated torque in the vicinity of rated frequency to be somewhat lower.
- 8) When a reactor is connected between the inverter and a motor, the motor's generated torque may fall.  
Setting auto-tuning may also cause a trip ( $E \xi n i$ ) rendering sensorless vector control unusable.

## 5.12 Manual torque boost - increasing torque boost at low speeds

5

### $u b$ : Torque boost 1

- Function  
If torque is inadequate at low speeds, increase torque by raising the torque boost rate with this parameter.



#### Parameters

| Title | Function       | Adjustment range | Default setting               |
|-------|----------------|------------------|-------------------------------|
| $u b$ | Torque boost 1 | 0.0 - 30.0 (%)   | According to model (See 11.4) |

★ Valid when  $P \xi$  is set to  $\bar{U}$  (V/F constant) or  $i$  (square reduction)

Note 1: The optimum value is programmed for each inverter capacity. Be careful not to increase the torque boost rate too much because it could cause an overcurrent trip at startup.

---

## 5.13 Setting the electronic thermal

---

**EHF** : Motor electronic-thermal protection level 1

**OLN** : Electronic thermal protection characteristic selection

For details, see 3.5.

---

## 5.14 Preset-speed operation (speeds in 15 steps)

---

**Fr1** - **Fr7**: Preset-speed frequency 1-7

For details, see 3.6.

5

---

## 5.15 Standard default setting

---

**LYP**: Default setting

For details, see 4.3.2.

---

## 5.16 Checking the region setting selection

---

**SET**: Checking the region setting

For details, see 4.4.

---

## 5.17 EASY key function

---

**PSEL**: Registered parameters display selection

For details, see 4.5.



## 6. Other parameters

Extended parameters are provided for sophisticated operation, fine adjustment and other special purposes. Modify parameter settings as required. See Section 11, Table of extended parameters.

### 6.1 Input/output parameters

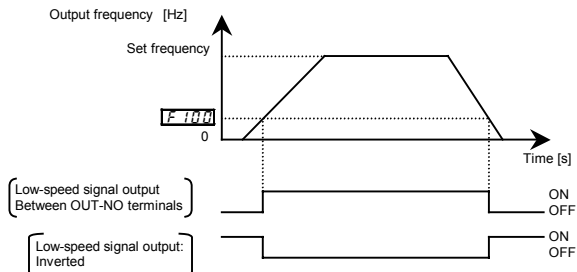
#### 6.1.1 Low-speed signal

**F 100**: Low-speed signal output frequency

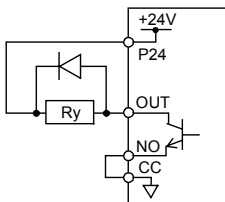
- **Function**  
When the output frequency exceeds the setting of **F 100** an ON signal will be generated. This signal can be used as an electromagnetic brake excitation/release signal. This signal can also be used as an operation signal when **F 100** is set to 0.0Hz, because an ON signal is put out if the output frequency exceeds 0.0Hz.  
★ Output from the open collector output terminal OUT. (Default)  
Output from relay output FLA-FLB-FLC is possible depending on the parameter settings.

[Parameter setting]

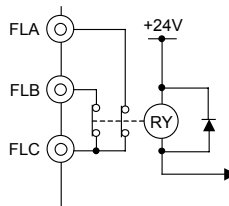
| Title        | Function                          | Adjustment range | Default setting |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <b>F 100</b> | Low-speed signal output frequency | 0.0 ~ FH (Hz)    | 0.0             |



An example of the connection of the open collector OUT terminal (sink logic)



An example of the connection of the relay output terminals



- Output terminal setting  
Default outputs low-speed signal (ON signal) to OUT terminal. This setting must be changed to invert the polarity of the signal.

[Parameter setting]

| Title        | Function                           | Adjustment range     | Default setting                       |
|--------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>F 130</i> | Output terminal selection 1A (OUT) | 0-255<br>(See 11.7.) | 4 (ON signal)<br>or<br>5 (OFF signal) |

Set *F 132* to output to FLA-FLC-FLB terminals.

## 6.1.2 Output of designated frequency reach signal

*F 102*: Speed reach detection band

- Function  
When the output frequency becomes equal to the setting by designated frequency  $\pm F 102$ , an ON or OFF signal is generated.

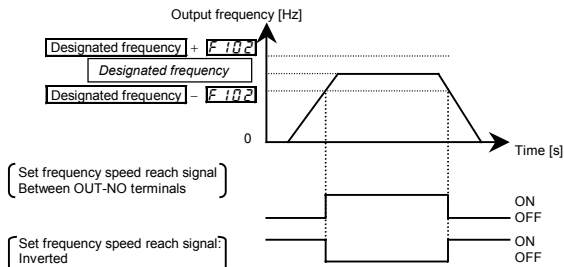
### ■ Parameter setting of designated frequency and detection band

| Title        | Function                   | Adjustment range | Default setting |
|--------------|----------------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>F 102</i> | Speed reach detection band | 0.0 ~ $F H$ (Hz) | 2.5             |

### ■ Parameter setting of output terminal selection

| Title        | Function                           | Adjustment range     | Setting value  |
|--------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|--|
| <i>F 130</i> | Output terminal selection 1A (OUT) | 0-255<br>(See 11.7.) | 6: RCH (designated frequency - ON signal), or<br>7: RCHN (designated frequency - OFF signal) |

Note: Set *F 132* to output to FLA-FLC-FLB terminals.



### 6.1.3 Output of set frequency speed reach signal

$F101$ : Speed reach setting frequency

$F102$ : Speed reach detection band

- Function  
When the output frequency becomes equal to the frequency set by  $F101 \pm F102$ , an ON or OFF signal is generated.

#### Parameter setting of frequency and detection band

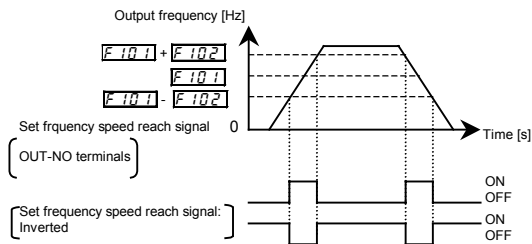
| Title  | Function                      | Adjustment range | Default setting |
|--------|-------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| $F101$ | Speed reach setting frequency | 0.0 ~ $FH$ (Hz)  | 0.0             |
| $F102$ | Speed reach detection band    | 0.0 ~ $FH$ (Hz)  | 2.5             |

#### Parameter setting of output terminal selection

| Title  | Function                           | Adjustment range     | Setting value  |
|--------|------------------------------------|----------------------|--|
| $F130$ | Output terminal selection 1A (OUT) | 0-255<br>(See 11.7.) | 8: RCHF (Set frequency attainment signal), or<br>9: RCHF (Inversion of RCHF) |

Note: Set  $F132$  to output to FLA-FLC-FLB terminals.

If the detection band value + the set frequency is less than the designated frequency



## 6.2 Input signal selection

### 6.2.1 Priority selection (Both F and R are ON)

**F105**: Priority selection (Both F and R are ON)

- Function
 

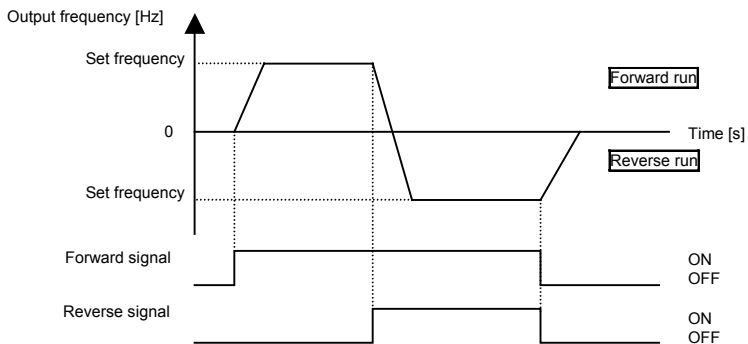
This parameter allows you to select the direction in which the motor runs when a forward run (F) command and a reverse run (R) command are entered simultaneously.

  - Reverse
  - Slowdown stop

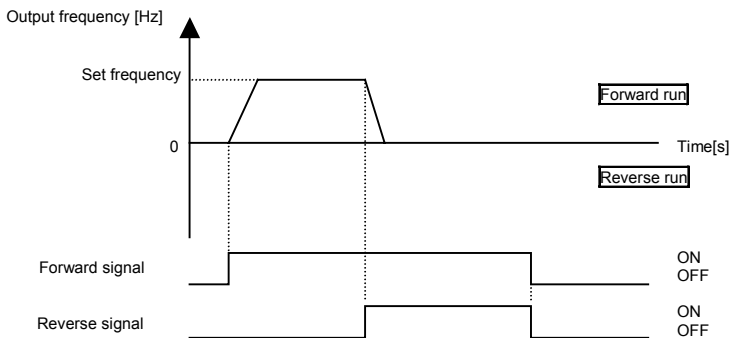
#### Parameter setting

| Title | Function                                 | Adjustment range               | Default setting |
|-------|--|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| F105  | Priority selection (Both F and R are ON) | 0: Reverse<br>1: Slowdown stop | 1               |

- (1) [ $F \ \overline{R} \ S = \overline{0}$  (Reverse)]: If an F command and an R command are entered simultaneously, the motor will run in the reverse direction.



- (2) [ $F \ \overline{R} \ S = 1$  (Stop)]: If an F command and an R command are entered simultaneously, the motor will slow down to a stop.



## 6.2.2 Changing the functions of VI terminal

**F109**: VI terminal function selection

- Function  
This parameter allows you to choose between analog input and logic input for the VI terminal.

### Parameter setting

| Title       | Function                                   | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|-------------|--|--|-----------------|
| <b>F109</b> | Analog/logic input selection (VI terminal) | 0: Voltage signal input (0 - 10 V)<br>1: Current signal input (4 - 20 mA)<br>2: Logic input<br>3: Voltage signal input (0 - 5 V) | 0               |

☆ Resolution is maximum 1/1000 when VI terminal is used as analog input terminal (**F109**=0 . . .3).

- \* In sink logic connection, be sure to insert a resistor between the P24 terminal and the VI terminal, when using it as the logic input terminal. For details, see 2.3.2 (page B-10).
- \* For information about the interface with the programmable controller, see 7.2.1 (page G-3).

## 6.3 Terminal function selection

### 6.3.1 Changing control logic switching

**F127**: Sink/source switching selection

- Function  
Control input/output terminal sink logic (minus common)/source logic (plus common) is switched.

#### Parameter settings

| Title       | Function              | Adjustment range                                 | Standard defaults |
|-------------|-----------------------|--|-------------------|
| <i>F127</i> | Sink/source switching | 0: Sink<br>100: Source<br>1-99, 101-255: invalid | *1                |

\* 1: Depends upon the setup menu settings.

☆ Sink/source settings are basically selected on the setup menu. (See 3.1.)

☆ After selecting them on the setup menu, the parameters are used for switching sink/source. However, disconnect the control circuit terminals of the inverter. Otherwise, the equipment may malfunction.

After setting *F127* switching, the check alarms (*E-50*, *E-51*) are displayed, reset panel, external signal, or power.

See pages B-9 and B-10 regarding sink/source logic connections.

### 6.3.2 Keeping an input terminal function always active (ON)

**F108**: Always-active function selection 1

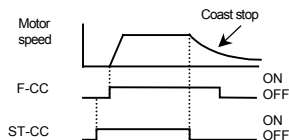
**F110**: Always-active function selection 2

- Function  
This parameter specifies an input terminal function that is always to be kept active (ON).

#### Parameter setting

| Title       | Function                           | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|-------------|------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| <i>F108</i> | Always-active function selection 1 | 0-123 (See 11.6.) | 0 (No function) |
| <i>F110</i> | Always-active function selection 2 | 0-123 (See 11.6.) | 6 (Standby)     |

- ★ Explanation of the coast stop function  
 When ST (Standby) is OFF, coast stops.  
 The default setting for ST (Standby) is ON, change the following settings.
- $F110=0$  (no function)
  - Assign open input terminal 6: ST (Standby).
- Coast stops if terminal set for ST (Standby) is set to OFF. The monitor on the inverter at this time displays  $0FF$



### 6.3.3 Modifying input terminal functions

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| $F111$ : Input terminal selection 1A (F)            | $F151$ : Input terminal selection 1B (F)  |
| $F112$ : Input terminal selection 2A (R)            | $F152$ : Input terminal selection 2B (R)  |
| $F113$ : Input terminal selection 3A (S1)           | $F153$ : Input terminal selection 3B (S1) |
| $F114$ : Input terminal selection 4A (S2)           | $F154$ : Input terminal selection 4B (S2) |
| $F109$ : Analog/logic input selection (VI Terminal) | $F155$ : Input terminal selection 1C (F)  |
| $F115$ : Input terminal selection 5 (VI)            | $F156$ : Input terminal selection 2C (R)  |

⇒For details about input terminal functions, see 7.2.1.

### 6.3.4 Modifying output terminal functions

- $F130$ : Output terminal selection 1A (OUT-NO)
- $F132$ : Output terminal selection 2 (FL)
- $F137$ : Output terminal selection 1B (OUT-NO)
- $F139$ : Output terminal logic selection (OUT-NO)

⇒For details about output terminal functions, see 7.2.2.



## 6.4 Basic parameters 2

### 6.4.1 Switching motor characteristics via terminal input

**F170**: Base frequency 2

**F171**: Base frequency voltage 2

**F172**: Torque boost 2

**F173**: Motor electronic-thermal protection level 2

**F185**: Stall prevention level 2

- Function

Use the above parameters to switch the operation of two motors with a single inverter and to select motor V/F characteristics (two types) according to the particular needs or operation mode.

Note: The  $P_L$  (V/F control mode selection) parameter is enabled only for motor1.

If motor 2 is selected, V/F control will be given constant torque characteristics.

#### ■ Parameter setting

| Title       | Function                                    | Adjustment range                       | Default setting                  |
|-------------|---|--|----------------------------------|
| <b>F170</b> | Base frequency 2                            | 25.0-400.0 (Hz)                        | *1                               |
| <b>F171</b> | Base frequency voltage 2                    | 50-330 (V)                             | *1                               |
| <b>F172</b> | Torque boost 2                              | 0.0-30.0 (%)                           | Depending on model<br>(See 11.4) |
| <b>F173</b> | Motor electronic-thermal protection level 2 | 10-100 (%) / (A) *2                    | 100                              |
| <b>F185</b> | Stall prevention level 2                    | 10-199 (%) / (A), *2<br>200 : Disabled | 150                              |

\*1: Depends upon the setup menu settings. **F170** is 50.0 or 60.0 (Hz), and 200, 220, or 230 (V) is selected for **F171**.

\*2: The inverter's rated current is 100%. When **F170** : (current and voltage unit selection) = / (A (amps)/V (volts)) is set, it can be set at A (amps).

## ■ Setting of switching terminals

To switch to motor 2, assign the following functions to a terminal not being used. It is also possible to switch to acceleration/deceleration 2 (AD2). For details, see 6.15.1.

It is possible to set 3 functions for terminal F and R, and 2 functions for terminal S1 and S2.

| Input terminal function number |           |            | Parameters changed from applicable parameters and default standards   |
|--------------------------------|-----------|------------|---|
| 24<br>AD2                      | 28<br>VF2 | 32<br>OCS2 |   |
| OFF                            | OFF       | OFF        | Standard default: $P\grave{e}, uL, uLv, ub, tHr, R\grave{e}e, d\grave{e}e, F502, F601$  |
| ON                             | OFF       | OFF        | $R\grave{e}e \rightarrow F500, d\grave{e}e \rightarrow F501, F502 \rightarrow F503$   |
| OFF                            | ON        | OFF        | $P\grave{e} \rightarrow V/F \text{ constant}, uL \rightarrow F170, uLv \rightarrow F171, ub \rightarrow F172, tHr \rightarrow F173$ |
| OFF                            | OFF       | ON         | $F601 \rightarrow F185$   |

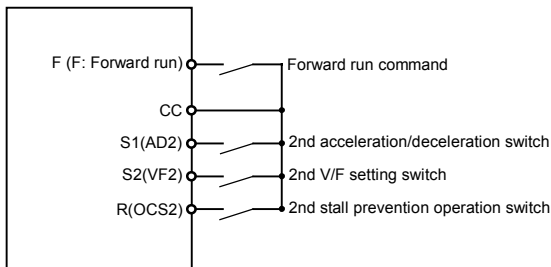
Note 1: Each of the following numbers (25, 29, 33) are reverse signals.

Note 2: Switching from "V/F constant" to  $P\grave{e} = i$  to  $\mathcal{U}$  cannot be done while running. Stop the motor before changing.

Note 3: Integral value of motor electronic thermal is cleared, after the motor switching.

6

## ■ Example of setting a terminal for switching : Sink logic



## 6.5 Setting frequency command

---

---

### 6.5.1 Switching frequency command

**F10d** : Frequency setting mode

**F111** to **F115** : Input terminal selection

**F151** to **F155** : Input terminal selection

- Function  
Frequency command can be changed according to the terminal block input.

For details, see 5.5.

## 6.5.2 Setting frequency command characteristics

**F109**: Analog/logic input selection (VI terminal)

**F201**: VI Input point 1 setting

**F202**: VI Input point 1 frequency

**F203**: VI Input point 2 setting

**F204**: VI Input point 2 frequency

**F209**: Analog input filter

- Function

Output frequency is adjusted in relation to frequency command according to external analog signals.

Analog signal is **F109** set to 0: 0 to 10 Vdc, 1: 4 to 20 mAdc, 3: 0 to 5 Vdc.

**F209** analog input filter is effective for eliminating noise from frequency setting circuit. Increase if operation cannot be done because noise effects stability.

- ★ To fine adjust the frequency command characteristics for VI input, use the parameters **F470** and **F471**. (See section 6.5.4.)

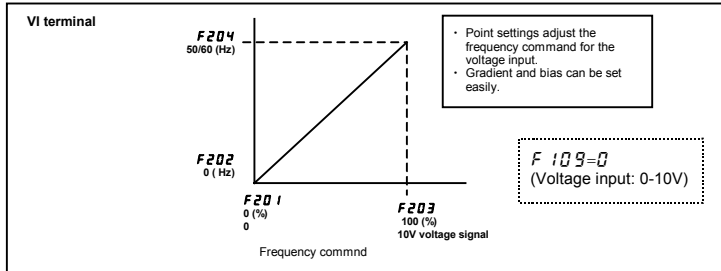
### Parameter settings

| Title       | Function                                   | Adjustment range   | Standard defaults |
|-------------|--|--|-------------------|
| <b>F109</b> | Analog/logic input selection (VI terminal) | 0: Voltage signal input (0 - 10 V)<br>1: Current signal input (4 - 20 mA)<br>2: Logic input<br>3: Voltage signal input (0 - 5 V) | 0                 |
| <b>F201</b> | VI point 1 setting                         | 0 ~ 100(%)   | 0                 |
| <b>F202</b> | VI point 1 frequency                       | 0.0 - 400.0 (Hz)   | 0.0               |
| <b>F203</b> | VI point 2 setting                         | 0 ~ 100(%)   | 100               |
| <b>F204</b> | VI point 2 frequency                       | 0.0 - 400.0 (Hz)   | *                 |
| <b>F209</b> | Analog input filter                        | 4 - 1000 (ms)  | 64                |

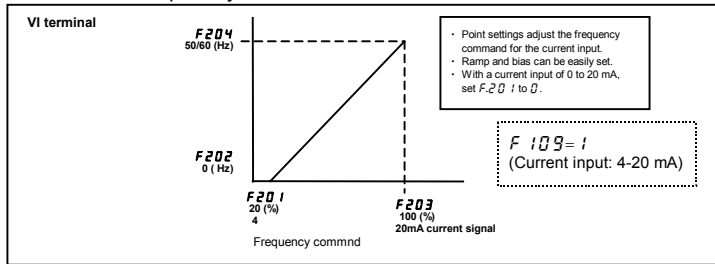
\* Depends upon the setup menu settings.

Note 1: Do not set point 1 and 2 (**F201** and **F203**) to the same value. If they are set to the same value, **Error** is displayed.

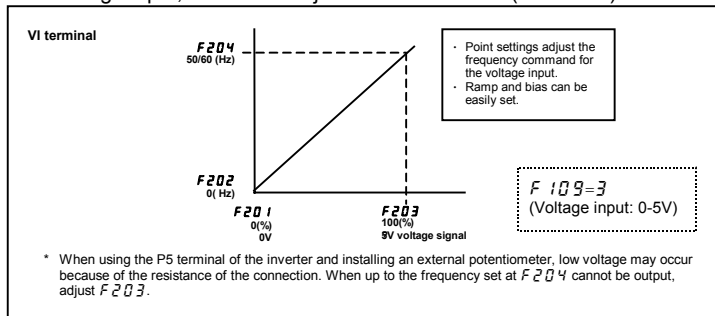
1) 0-10Vdc voltage input adjustment



2) 4-20mA current input adjustment



3) 0-5 Vdc voltage input, or used to adjust external volume (P5-VI-CC)



### 6.5.3 Setting of frequency with the input from an external contact

**F264**: External logic input - UP response time

**F265**: External logic input - UP frequency steps

**F266**: External logic input - DOWN response time

**F267**: External logic input - DOWN frequency steps

**F268**: Initial value of UP/DOWN frequency

**F269**: Change of the initial value of UP/DOWN frequency

- Function

These parameters are used to set an output frequency by means of a signal from an external device.

#### ■ Parameter settings

| Title       | Function   | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|-------------|--|--|-----------------|
| <b>F264</b> | External logic input - UP response time          | 0.0 - 10.0 (S)   | 0.1             |
| <b>F265</b> | External logic input - UP frequency steps        | 0.0 - $F_H$ (Hz)   | 0.1             |
| <b>F266</b> | External logic input - DOWN response time        | 0.0 - 10.0 (S)   | 0.1             |
| <b>F267</b> | External logic input - DOWN frequency steps      | 0.0 - $F_H$ (Hz)   | 0.1             |
| <b>F268</b> | Initial value of UP/DOWN frequency               | $L_L - U_L$ (Hz)   | 0.0             |
| <b>F269</b> | Change of the initial value of UP/DOWN frequency | 0: Not changed<br>1: Setting of <b>F268</b> changed when power is turned off | 1               |

☆ This function is valid when the parameter **F00d** (frequency setting mode selection) = 5 is set.

#### ■ Input terminal settings

Assign the following functions to the input terminal, you can change (up/down) or clear the output frequency by using the terminal's ON/OFF.

| Input terminal function |   | ON  | OFF                  |
|-------------------------|---|---|----------------------|
| 88                      | Frequency UP signal input from external logic input   | Frequency setting increase                                  | Clear                |
| 90                      | Frequency DOWN signal input from external logic input | Frequency setting decrease                                  | Clear                |
| 92                      | External logic input up/down frequency clear          | OFF → ON: External contact up/down frequency Clear settings | <b>F00d</b> settings |

Note 1: Each of the following numbers (89, 91, 93) are reverse signals.

### ■ Adjustment with continuous signals (Operation example 1)

Set parameters as follows to adjust the output frequency up or down in proportion to the frequency adjustment signal input time:

Panel frequency incremental gradient =  $F 2 6 5 / F 2 6 4$  setting time

Panel frequency decremental gradient =  $F 2 6 7 / F 2 6 6$  setting time

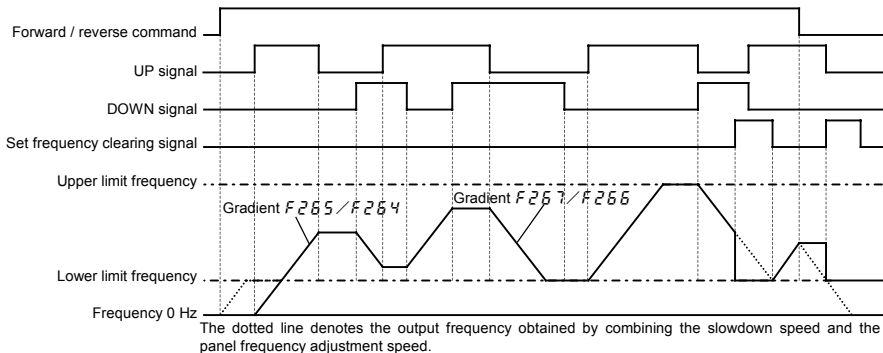
Set parameters as follows to adjust the output frequency up or down almost in synchronization with the adjustment by the panel frequency command:

$F 2 6 4 = F 2 6 6 = 1$

$(F H I R C L) \geq (F 2 6 5 / F 2 6 4 \text{ setting time})$

$(F H I D E L) \geq (F 2 6 7 / F 2 6 6 \text{ setting time})$

#### <<Sample sequence diagram 1: Adjustment with continuous signals>>



Note: If the operation frequency is set to the lower limit frequency, it will increase from 0Hz when power is turned on for the first time after the setting, and therefore the output frequency will not rise until the operation frequency reaches the lower limit frequency. (Operation at the lower limit frequency)  
In this case, the time required for the operation frequency to reach the lower limit frequency can be shortened by setting  $F 2 6 4$  to the lower limit frequency.

### ■ Adjustment with pulse signals (Operation example 2)

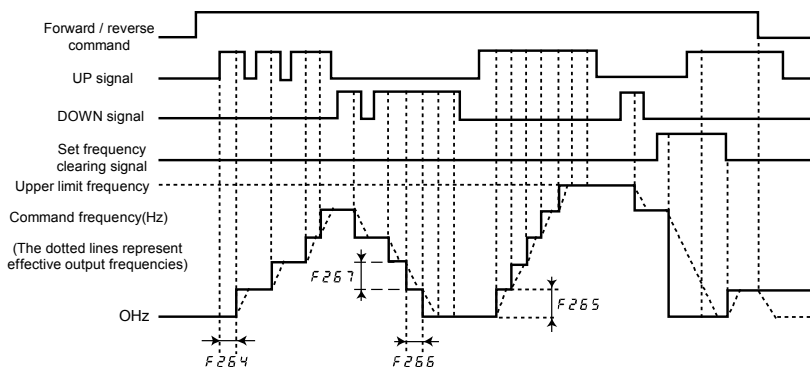
Set parameters as follows to adjust the frequency in steps of one pulse:

$F 2 6 4, F 2 6 6 =$  Pulse On time

$F 2 6 5, F 2 6 7 =$  Frequency obtained with each pulse

\* The inverter does not respond to any pulses with an ON time shorter than that set with  $F 2 6 4$  or  $F 2 6 6$ . 12ms or more of clearing signal is allowed.

## &lt;&lt;Sample sequence diagram 2: Adjustment with pulse signals&gt;&gt;



### ■ If two signals are impressed simultaneously

- If a clear signal and an up or down signal are impressed simultaneously, priority will be given to the clear signal.
- If up and down signals are impressed simultaneously, The frequency will change at the specified up or down rate.

### ■ About the setting of the initial up/down frequency

To adjust the frequency starting at a specified frequency other than 0.0 Hz (default initial frequency) after turning on the inverter, specify the desired frequency using  $F26B$  (initial up/down frequency).

### ■ About the change of the initial up/down frequency

To make the inverter automatically save the frequency immediately before it is turned off and start operation at that frequency next time power is turned on, set  $F269$  (change of initial up/down frequency) to 1 (which changes the setting of  $F26B$  when power is turned off). Keep in mind that the setting of  $F26B$  is changed each time power is turned off.

### ■ Frequency adjustment range

The frequency can be set from 0.0Hz to  $FH$  (Maximum frequency). The lower-limit frequency will be set as soon as the set frequency clearing function (function number 92, 93) is entered from the input terminal.

### ■ Minimum unit of frequency adjustment

If  $F702$  (Frequency free unit magnification) is set to 1.00, the output frequency can be adjusted in steps of 0.01Hz.



## 6.5.4 Fine adjustment of frequency setting signal

**F470**: VI voltage input bias

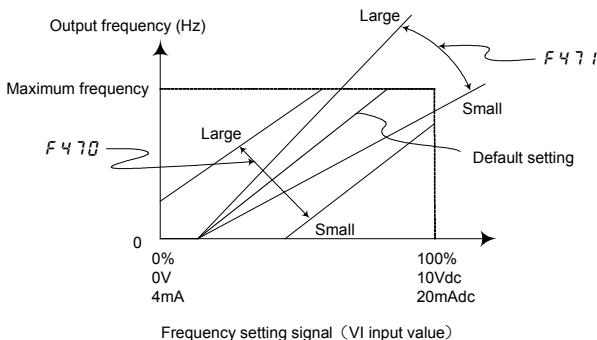
**F471**: VI voltage input gain

- Function

These parameters are used to fine adjust the relation between the frequency setting signal input through the analog input terminal VI and the output frequency.

Use these parameters to make fine adjustments after making rough adjustments using the parameters **F201** to **F204**.

The figure below shows the characteristic of the frequency setting signal input through the VI terminal and that of the output frequency.



- \* Bias adjustment of VI input terminals (**F470**)

To give leeway, the inverter is factory-adjusted by default so that it will not produce an output until a certain amount of voltage is applied to the VI input terminal. If you want to reduce the leeway, set **F470** to a larger value. Note that specifying a too large value may cause an output frequency to be output, even though the operation frequency is 0 (zero) Hz.

- \* Gain adjustment of VI input terminals (**F471**)

The inverter is factory-adjusted by default so that the operation frequency can reach the maximum frequency, even though the voltage and current to the VI input terminal are below the maximum levels. If you want to adjust the inverter so that it will output the maximum frequency at the maximum voltage and current, set **F471** to a smaller value. Note that specifying a too small value may cause the operation frequency not to reach the maximum frequency, even though the maximum voltage and current are applied.

## 6.6 Operation frequency

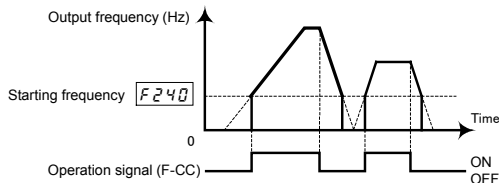
### 6.6.1 Starting frequency

**F240**: Starting frequency setting

- Function  
The function set with **F240** is put out as soon as operation is started. Use the **F240** parameter when a delay in response of starting torque according to the acceleration/deceleration time is probably affecting operation. Setting the starting frequency to a value from 0.5 to 3Hz is recommended. The occurrence of an overcurrent can be suppressed by setting this frequency below the rated slippage of the motor.

[Parameter setting]

| Title       | Function                   | Adjustment range | Default setting |
|-------------|----------------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <b>F240</b> | Starting frequency setting | 0.1-10.0 (Hz)    | 0.5             |



### 6.6.2 Run/stop control with frequency setting signals

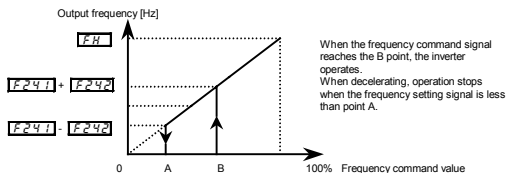
**F241**: Operation starting frequency

**F242**: Operation starting frequency hysteresis

- Function  
The Run/stop of operation can be controlled simply with frequency setting signals.

[Parameter setting]

| Title       | Function                                | Adjustment range | Default setting |
|-------------|---|------------------|-----------------|
| <b>F241</b> | Operation starting frequency            | 0.0- $F_H$ (Hz)  | 0.0             |
| <b>F242</b> | Operation starting frequency hysteresis | 0.0- $F_H$ (Hz)  | 0.0             |



## 6.7 DC braking

### 6.7.1 DC braking

**F250**: DC braking starting frequency

**F251**: DC braking current

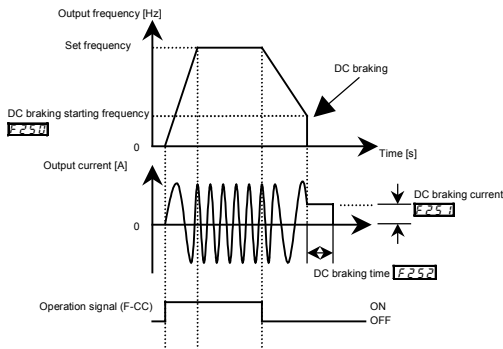
**F252**: DC braking time

- Function

A large braking torque can be obtained by applying a direct current to the motor. These parameters set the direct current to be applied to the motor, the application time and the starting frequency.

[Parameter setting]

| Title       | Function                      | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|-------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| <b>F250</b> | DC braking starting frequency | 0.0- $F_H$ (Hz)   | 0.0             |
| <b>F251</b> | DC braking current            | 0.0-100 (%) / (A) | 50              |
| <b>F252</b> | DC braking time               | 0.0-25.5 (sec)    | 1.0             |



Note 1: During DC braking, the overload protection sensitivity of the inverter increases. The DC braking current may be adjusted automatically to prevent tripping.

Note 2: During DC braking, the carrier frequency becomes the setting of parameter **F300** (PWM carrier frequency).

Note 3: DC braking can be done by using terminal input. Input terminal 22: Assign DC braking command (23 is reverse).

DC braking is applied while the terminal is ON, regardless of the **F250**, **F252** settings. Even if the terminal is OFF, DC braking is applied only for the **F252** time.

The amount of DC braking depends on the **F251** settings.

## 6.8 Auto-stop in case of lower-limit frequency continuous operation

### 6.8.1 Auto-stop in case of lower-limit frequency continuous operation

**F256**: Auto-stop in case of lower-limit frequency continuous operation

**F391**: Auto-stop hysteresis in case of lower-limit frequency continuous operation

- Function

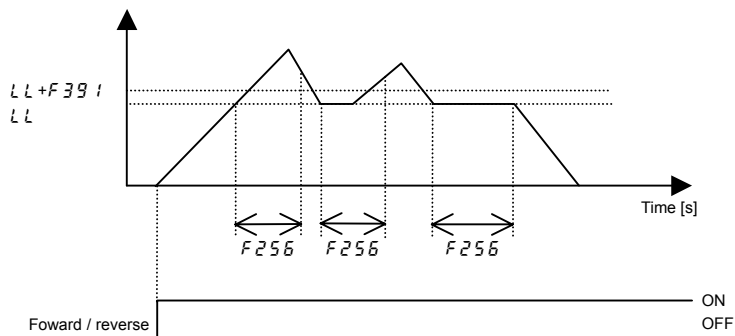
If operation is carried out continuously at a frequency below the lower-limit frequency ( $L L$ ) for the period of time set with  $F 2 5 6$ , the inverter will automatically slow down the motor to a stop. At that time, "L L P" is displayed (alternately) on the operation panel.

This function will be canceled if a frequency command above the lower-limit frequency ( $L L$ ) +  $F 3 9 1$  (Hz).

[Parameter setting]

| Title     | Function   | Adjustment range                   | Default setting |
|-----------|--|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| $F 2 5 6$ | Auto-stop in case of lower-limit frequency continuous operation time       | 0.0: Disabled<br>0.1 - 600.0 (sec) | 0.0             |
| $F 3 9 1$ | Auto-stop hysteresis in case of lower-limit frequency continuous operation | 0.0- $L L$ (Hz)                    | 0.2             |

Output frequency [Hz]



Note: This function is valid when doing forward/reverse switching.

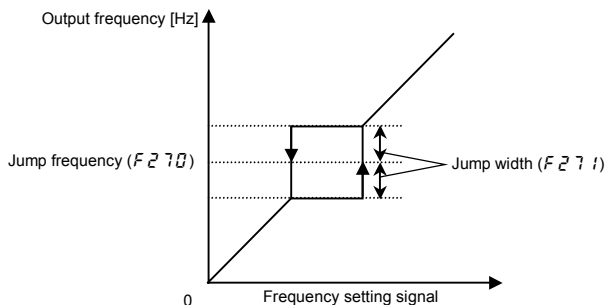
When starting operation, does not operate until operation frequency reaches 11.

## 6.9 Jump frequency - Avoiding frequency resonance

**F270**: Jump frequency

**F271**: Jumping width

- Function  
Resonance due to the natural frequency of the mechanical system can be avoided by jumping the resonant frequency during operation. During jumping, hysteresis characteristics with respect to the jump frequency are given to the motor.



[Parameter setting]

| Title       | Function       | Adjustment range | Default setting |
|-------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>F270</i> | Jump frequency | 0.0- $F_H$ (Hz)  | 0.0             |
| <i>F271</i> | Jump width     | 0.0-30.0 (Hz)    | 0.0             |

Note 1: During acceleration and deceleration, the operation frequency jumps do not occur.

## 6.10 Preset-speed operation frequencies

**F287** - **F294**: Preset-speed operation frequency 8 to 15

See Section 3.5 for details.

## 6.11 PWM carrier frequency

**F300**: PWM carrier frequency

**F312**: Random mode

**F316**: Carrier frequency control mode selection

- Function
  - 1) The **F300** parameter allows the tone of the magnetic noise from the motor to be changed by switching the PWM carrier frequency. This parameter is also effective in preventing the motor from resonating with its load machine or its fan cover.
  - 2) In addition, the **F300** parameter reduces the electromagnetic noise generated by the inverter. Reduce the carrier frequency to reduce electromagnetic noise. Note: Although the electromagnetic noise level is reduced, the acoustic noise of the motor is increased.
  - 3) The random mode reduces motor electromagnetic noise by changing the pattern of the reduced carrier frequency.

[Parameter setting]

| Title       | Function                                 | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|-------------|--|---|-----------------|
| <b>F300</b> | PWM carrier frequency                    | 2-16 (kHz) (*)  | 12              |
| <b>F312</b> | Random mode                              | 0: Disabled, 1: Automatic setting   | 0               |
| <b>F316</b> | Carrier frequency control mode selection | 0: Carrier frequency without reduction<br>1: Carrier frequency with automatic reduction | 1               |

Note 1: Some models need reduced current ratings, depending on the PWM carrier frequency **F300** settings. Refer to the table on the following page.

Note 2: When the PWM carrier frequency is set high, selecting "Carrier frequency not reduced automatically" causes the inverter to be tripped more easily than selecting "Carrier frequency reduced automatically."

Reduction of rated current.

[Three phase/single phase 200 V class]

| VFNC3-<br>VFNC3S- | Ambient<br>temperature | Carrier frequency |            |             |
|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------|------------|-------------|
|                   |                        | 2 - 4 kHz         | 5 - 12 kHz | 13 - 16 kHz |
| 2001P/PL          | 50°C or less           | 0.7 A             | 0.7 A      | 0.7 A       |
| 2002P/PL          | 50°C or less           | 1.4 A             | 1.4 A      | 1.4 A       |
| 2004P/PL          | 50°C or less           | 2.4 A             | 2.4 A      | 2.4 A       |
| 2007P             | 40°C or less           | 4.2 A             | 3.6 A      | 3.0 A       |
|                   | 40 ~ 50°C              | 4.2 A             | 3.2 A      | 2.8 A       |
| 2007PL            | 40°C or less           | 4.2 A             | 3.2 A      | 2.8 A       |
|                   | 40 ~ 50°C              | 4.2 A             | 3.2 A      | 2.8 A       |
| 2015P/PL          | 40°C or less           | 7.5 A             | 7.5 A      | 7.1 A       |
|                   | 40 ~ 50°C              | 7.5 A             | 7.1 A      | 7.1 A       |
| 2022P             | 40°C or less           | 10.0 A            | 8.5 A      | 7.5 A       |
|                   | 40 ~ 50°C              | 10.0 A            | 7.5 A      | 7.5 A       |
| 2022PL            | 40°C or less           | 10.0 A            | 9.1 A      | 8.0 A       |
|                   | 40 ~ 50°C              | 10.0 A            | 7.5 A      | 7.5 A       |
| 2037P             | 50°C or less           | 16.7 A            | 14.0 A     | 14.0 A      |

[Single phase 100 V class]

| VFNC3S- | Ambient<br>temperature | Carrier frequency |            |             |
|---------|------------------------|-------------------|------------|-------------|
|         |                        | 2 - 4 kHz         | 5 - 12 kHz | 13 - 16 kHz |
| 1001P   | 50°C or less           | 0.7 A             | 0.7 A      | 0.7 A       |
| 1002P   | 50°C or less           | 1.4 A             | 1.4 A      | 1.4 A       |
| 1004P   | 50°C or less           | 2.4 A             | 2.4 A      | 2.4 A       |
| 1007P   | 50°C or less           | 4.2 A             | 4.0 A      | 4.0 A       |

- \* If ambient temperature exceeds 40°C, reduce current according to table above.
- \* Default setting of PWM carrier frequency is 12kHz, but rated output current of rating label display at 4kHz.  
If  $F \text{ } \overline{3} \text{ } \overline{15}$  is set to  $\overline{1}$  or  $\overline{3}$ , however, the carrier frequency will decrease automatically with increase in current in order to secure the rated current at frequencies of 4 kHz or less.
- \* If  $F \text{ } \overline{3} \text{ } \overline{15} = \overline{0}$ , and current is increased to the automatic reduction level, the  $\overline{0} \text{ } \overline{1} \text{ } \overline{3}$  alarm occurs, if current is increased further  $\overline{0} \text{ } \overline{1} \text{ } \overline{3}$  trips.
- \* Random mode is exercised when the motor is operated in a low-frequency range where it produces annoying acoustic noise.  
If the carrier frequency ( $F \text{ } \overline{3} \text{ } \overline{0} \text{ } \overline{0}$ ) is set above 8 kHz, the random mode function will not be performed, because the level of motor magnetic noise is low at high frequencies.

## 6.12 Trip-less intensification

### 6.12.1 Auto-restart (Restart of coasting motor)

**F301**: Auto-restart control selection



Caution



Instruction

- Stand clear of motors and mechanical equipment  
If the motor stops due to a momentary power failure, the equipment will start suddenly when power is restored. This could result in unexpected injury.
- Attach warnings about sudden restart after a momentary power failure on inverters, motors and equipment for prevention of accidents in advance.

• Function

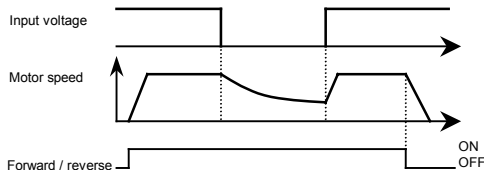
The **F301** parameter detects the rotating speed and rotational direction of the motor during coasting in the event of momentary power failure, and then after power has been restored, restarts the motor smoothly (motor speed search function). This parameter also allows commercial power operation to be switched to inverter operation without stopping the motor.

During operation, "rtr 4" is displayed.

| Title       | Function                       | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|-------------|--------------------------------|--|-----------------|
| <b>F301</b> | Auto-restart control selection | 0: Disabled<br>1: At auto-restart after momentary stop<br>2: When ST terminal off and on<br>3: 1 + 2<br>4: At start-up | 0               |

\* If the motor is restarted in retry mode, this function will operate, regardless of the setting of this parameter.

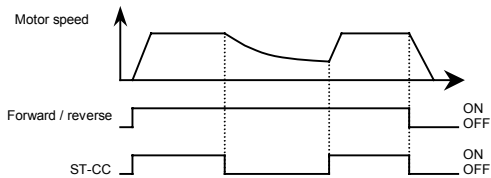
#### 1) Auto-restart after momentary power failure (Auto-restart function)



★ Setting **F301** to 1 or 3: This function operates after power has been restored following detection of an undervoltage by the main circuits and control power.



## 2) Restarting motor during coasting (Motor speed search function)



★ Setting  $F301$  to 2 or 3: This function operates after the ST-CC terminal connection has been opened first and then connected again.

Note: The terminal function ST needs to be assigned to an input terminal, using the parameters  $F111$  to  $F115$ .

## 3) Motor speed search at starting

When  $F301$  is set to 4, a motor speed search is performed each time operation is started.

This function is useful especially when the motor is not operated by the inverter but it is running because of external force.

### Warning!!

- At restart, it takes about 3 seconds for the inverter to check to see the number of revolutions of the motor.  
For this reason, the start-up takes more time than usual.
- Use this function when operating a system with one motor connected to one inverter.  
This function may not operate properly in a system configuration with multiple motors connected to one inverter.

### **Application to a crane or hoist**

**The crane or hoist may have its load moved downward during the above waiting time from input of the operation starting command to the restart of the motor. To apply the inverter to such machines, therefore, set the auto-restart control mode selection parameter to " $F301=0$ " (Disabled), Do not use the retry function, either.**

## 6.12.2 Regenerative power ride-through control/Deceleration stop

### **F302**: Regenerative power ride-through control (Deceleration stop)

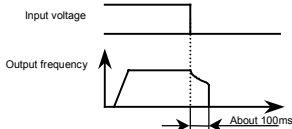
- Function
  - 1) Regenerative power ride-through control:  
This function continues the operation of the motor by utilizing motor regenerative energy in the event of momentary power failure.
  - 2) Slowdown stop in the event of momentary power failure:  
If a momentary power failure occurs during operation, the inverter stops forcibly. (Deceleration time varies with control.) When operation is stopped, the message "S E P" is displayed (alternately) on the operation panel.  
After the forced stop, the inverter remains static until you put off the operation command momentarily.

#### [Parameter setting]

| Title       | Function  | Adjustment range                              | Default setting |
|-------------|---|---|-----------------|
| <b>F302</b> | Regenerative power ride-through control (Deceleration stop) | 0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled<br>2: Slowdown stop | 0               |

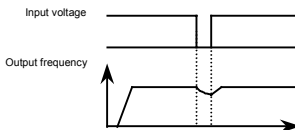
Note 1: Even when this parameter is set, the particular load conditions may cause the motor to coast. In this case, combine **F301** (auto-restart function) to restart quickly after recovery.

[When power is interrupted]



\* The time for which the operation of the motor can be continued depends on the machine inertia and load conditions. Before using this function, therefore, perform verification tests.

[If momentary power failure occurs]



### 6.12.3 Retry function

**F303**: Retry selection (Selecting the number of times)



Caution



Instruction

- Do not go near the motor in alarm-stop status when the retry function is selected. The motor may suddenly restart, which could result in injury.
- Take measures for safety, e.g. attach a cover to the motor, to prevent accidents if the motor suddenly restarts.

- **Function**  
This parameter resets the inverter automatically when the inverter gives an alarm. During the retry mode, the motor speed search function operated automatically as required and thus allows smooth motor restarting.

[Parameter setting]

| Title       | Function                          | Adjustment range        | Default setting |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>F303</i> | Retry selection (number of times) | 0: Disabled, 1-10 times | 0               |

The likely causes of tripping and the corresponding retry processes are listed below.

| Cause of tripping       | Retry process   | Canceling conditions  |
|-------------------------|---|---|
| Momentary power failure | Up to 10 times in succession<br>1st retry: About 1 sec after tripping | The retry function will be canceled at once if tripping is caused by an unusual event other than: momentary power failure, overcurrent, overvoltage or overload.<br>This function will also be canceled if retrying is not successful within the specified number of times. |
| Overcurrent             | 2nd retry: About 2 sec after tripping                                 |   |
| Overvoltage             | 3rd retry: About 3 sec after tripping                                 |   |
| Overload                | ⋮   |   |
| Overheating             | 10th retry: About 10 sec after tripping                               |   |

- ★ Retry is only done when the following trips occur.

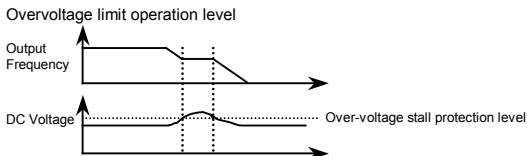
*OC 1, OC 2, OC 3, OP 1, OP 2, OP 3, OL 1, OL 2, OL 3, OH*

- ★ Protective operation detection relay signals (FLA, FLB, FLC terminal signals) are not sent during use of the retry function. (Default setting)
- ★ To allow a signal to be sent to the protective action detection relay (FLA, B and C terminals) even during the retry process, assign function numbers *146* or *147* to *F132*.
- ★ A virtual cooling time is provided for overload tripping (*OL 1, OL 2*).  
In this case, the retry function operates after the virtual cooling time and retry time.
- ★ In the event of tripping caused by an overvoltage (*OP 1 - OP 3*), the retry function will not be activated until the voltage in the DC section comes down to a normal level.
- ★ In the event of tripping caused by overheating (*OH*), the retry function will not be activated until the temperature in the inverter comes down low enough for it to restart operation.
- ★ During retrying, the blinking display will alternate between *r L Y* and the monitor display specified by status monitor display mode selection parameter *F710*.
- ★ The number of retries will be cleared if the inverter is not tripped for the specified period of time after a successful retry.  
"A successful retry" means that the inverter output frequency reaches the command frequency without causing the inverter to re-trip.

## 6.12.4 Avoiding overvoltage tripping

### **F305**: Overvoltage limit operation

- Function
  - These parameters are used to keep the output frequency constant or increase it to prevent overvoltage tripping in case the voltage in the DC section rises during deceleration or varying speed operation. The deceleration time during overvoltage limit operation may increase above the designated time.



[Parameter setting]

| Title | Function  | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|-------|---|---|-----------------|
| F305  | Overvoltage limit operation<br>(Slowdown stop mode selection) | 0: Enabled<br>1: Disabled<br>2: Enabled (Quick deceleration control)<br>3: Enabled (Dynamic quick deceleration control) | 2               |

- ★ If F305 is set to 2 (quick deceleration control), the inverter will increase the voltage to the motor (over-excitation control) to increase the amount of energy consumed by the motor when the voltage reaches the overvoltage protection level, and therefore the motor can be decelerated more quickly than normal deceleration.
- ★ If F305 is set to 3 (dynamic quick deceleration control), the inverter will increase the voltage to the motor (over-excitation control) to increase the amount of energy consumed by the motor as soon as the motor begins to slow down, and therefore the motor can be decelerated still more quickly than quick deceleration.
- ★ During overvoltage limit operation, the overvoltage pre-alarm (P blinks) is displayed.
- ★ F799 is parameter for maker settings. Do not change this parameter.

## 6.12.5 Output voltage adjustment/Supply voltage correction

**ULU**: Base frequency voltage 1

**F307**: Supply voltage correction (output voltage limitation)

- Function

**Base frequency voltage1**

The **F307** parameter adjusts the voltage corresponding to the base frequency 1 **ULU** so that no voltage exceeding the **ULU** set value is put out. (This function is enabled only when **F307** is set to either "0" or "1".)

**Supply voltage correction**

The **F307** parameter maintains a constant V/F ratio, even when the input voltage decreases. The torque during low-speed operation is prevented from decreasing.

Supply voltage correction: Maintains a constant V/F ratio, even when the input voltage fluctuates.

Output voltage limitation: Limits the voltage at frequencies exceeding the base frequency. Applied when operating a special motor with low induced voltage.

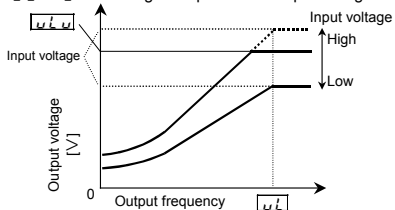
[Parameter setting]

| Title       | Function  | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|-------------|---|--|-----------------|
| <b>ULU</b>  | Base frequency voltage1                               | 50-330 (V)   | *1              |
| <b>F307</b> | Supply voltage correction (output voltage limitation) | 0: Supply voltage uncorrected, output voltage limited<br>1: Supply voltage corrected, output voltage limited<br>2: Supply voltage uncorrected, output voltage unlimited<br>3: Supply voltage corrected, output voltage unlimited | *1              |

\*1: Depends upon the setup menu settings.

- ★ If **F307** is set to "0" or "2", the output voltage will change in proportion to the input voltage.
- ★ Even if the base frequency voltage (**ULU** parameter) is set above the input voltage, the output voltage will not exceed the input voltage.
- ★ The rate of voltage to frequency can be adjusted according to the rated motor capacity. For example, setting **F307** to "0" or "1" prevents the output voltage from increasing, even if the input voltage changes when operation frequency exceeds the base frequency.
- ★ When the V/F control mode selection parameter (**P1**) is set to any number between 2 to 4, the supply voltage is corrected regardless of the setting of **F307**.

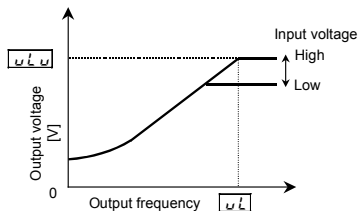
[F 30 7=0: No voltage compensation/output voltage limited]



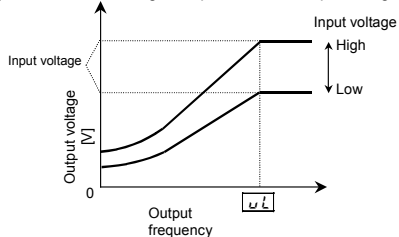
\* The above applies when V/F control mode selection parameter  $P_{\Sigma}$  is set to "0" or "1".

$\frac{\omega L \omega}{\text{Rated voltage}} > 1$  the output voltage can be prevented from exceeding the input voltage.

[F 30 7=1: Voltage compensation/output voltage limited]



[F 30 7=2: No voltage compensation/no output voltage limit]

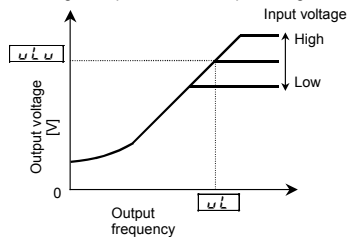


\* The above applies when V/F control mode selection parameter  $P_{\Sigma}$  is set to "0" or "1".

$\frac{\omega L \omega}{\text{Rated voltage}} > 1$  the output voltage can be prevented from exceeding the input voltage.

Note: Rated voltage is fixed at 200 V.

[F 30 7=3: Voltage compensation/no output voltage control]



\* Note that even if the input voltage is set less than  $\omega L \omega$  for a base frequency of  $\omega L$  or higher output frequency, then an output voltage over  $\omega L \omega$  occurs.

## 6.12.6 Reverse-run prohibition

**F311**: Reverse-run prohibition

- Function  
This function prevents the motor from running in the forward or reverse direction when it receives the wrong operation signal.

[Parameter setting]

| Title | Function                | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|-------|-------------------------|--|-----------------|
| F311  | Reverse-run prohibition | 0: Forward/reverse run permitted<br>1: Reverse run prohibited<br>2: Forward run prohibited | 0               |

## 6.13 PID control

**F359**: PID control waiting time

**F360**: PID control

**F362**: Proportional gain

**F363**: Integral gain

**F366**: Differential gain

**F380**: PID forward/reverse characteristics selection

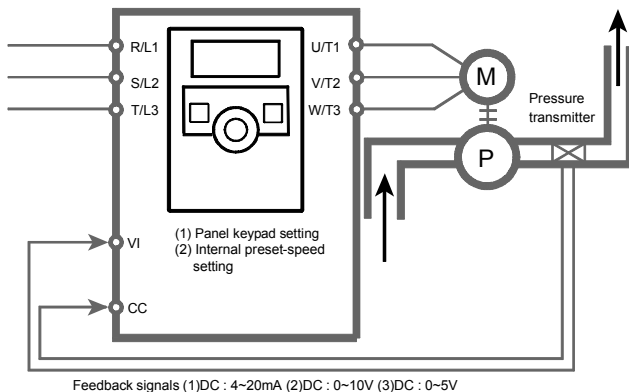
- Function  
Using feedback signals (4 to 20mA, 0 to 5 V, 0 to 10V) from a detector, process control can be exercised, for example, to keep the airflow, amount of flow or pressure constant.  
Or, it is also possible to always set 0 for integral and differential at terminal input.

[Parameter setting]

| Title | Function                                      | Adjustment range                                       | Default setting |
|-------|---|--|-----------------|
| F359  | PID control waiting time                      | 0-2400 [sec]   | 0               |
| F360  | PID control                                   | 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled                                | 0               |
| F362  | Proportional gain                             | 0.01-100.0   | 0.30            |
| F363  | Integral gain                                 | 0.01-100.0   | 0.20            |
| F366  | Differential gain                             | 0.00-2.55  | 0.00            |
| F380  | PID forward/reverse characteristics selection | 0: Forward characteristic<br>1: Reverse characteristic | 0               |



1) External connection



2) Types of PID control interfaces

Set process amount input value (frequency setting) for when doing PID control.

| Process amount input value (frequency setting)   | Feedback signal  |
|--|--|
| Frequency setup mode selection: $F \overline{R} \overline{Q} \overline{d}$<br>1: Setting dial 1 (press in center to save)<br>2: Setting dial 2 (save even if power is off)<br>3: RS485 communication<br>5: UP/DOWN from external logic input | External analog input<br>VI (DC: 4 - 20 mA/<br>DC: 0 - 10 V/<br>DC: 0 - 5 V) |
| Preset-speed operation ( $\overline{C} \overline{R} \overline{Q} \overline{d} = \overline{0}$ , $F \overline{R} \overline{Q} \overline{d}$ are all possible)   |  |

Note 1: Regarding setting value for  $F \overline{R} \overline{Q} \overline{d}$ : Terminal VI is used for a feed back signal, do not set  $F \overline{R} \overline{Q} \overline{d} = \overline{0}$  (terminal VI).

3) Setting PID control

Set "!" in the extended parameter  $F \overline{3} \overline{6} \overline{0}$  (PID control).

- (1) Set parameters  $R \overline{C} \overline{C}$  (acceleration time), and  $d \overline{E} \overline{C}$  (deceleration time) to the system fitting values.
- (2) To limit the output frequency, set parameters  $\overline{U} \overline{L}$  (upper limit frequency) and  $\overline{L} \overline{L}$  (lower limit frequency). If process quantities are set with the jog dial, however, the process quantity setting range will be limited by the settings of  $\overline{U} \overline{L}$  and  $\overline{L} \overline{L}$ .

#### 4) Adjusting the PID control gain level

Adjust the PID control gain level according to the process quantities, the feedback signals and the object to be controlled.

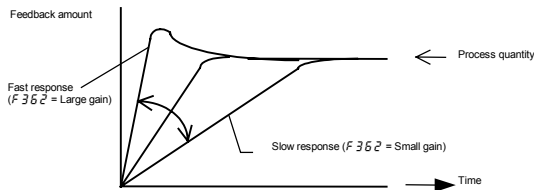
The following parameters are provided for gain adjustment:

| Title          | Function              | Adjustment range | Standard defaults |
|----------------|-----------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>F 3 6 2</i> | Proportional gain (P) | 0.01 ~ 100.0     | 0.30              |
| <i>F 3 6 3</i> | Integral gain (I)     | 0.01 ~ 100.0     | 0.20              |
| <i>F 3 6 6</i> | Derivative gain (D)   | 0.00 ~ 2.55      | 0.00              |

#### *F 3 6 2* (P-gain adjustment parameter)

This parameter adjusts the proportional gain level during PID control. A correction value proportional to the particular deviation (the difference between the process quantity and the feedback value) is obtained by multiplying this deviation by the parameter setting.

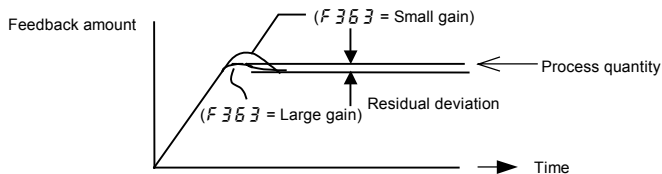
A larger P-gain adjustment value gives faster response. Too large an adjustment value, however, results in an unstable event such as hunting.



#### *F 3 6 3* (I-gain adjustment parameter)

This parameter adjusts the integral gain level during PID control. Any deviations remaining unremoved during proportional action are cleared to zero (residual deviation offset function).

A larger I-gain adjustment value reduces residual deviations. Too large an adjustment value, however, results in an unstable event such as hunting.

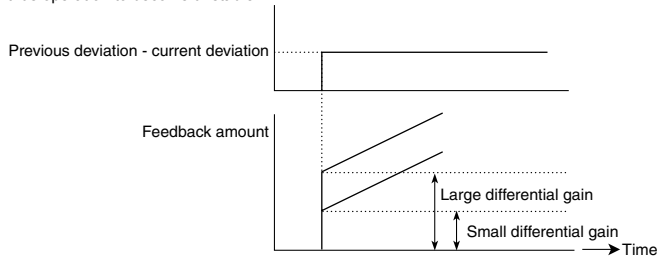


- ☆ Assign an input terminal function 52 (PID integral/derivative) to an input terminal, when that input terminal is ON, it is possible to calculate integral/derivative amounts always as 0 (zero).

### F356 (D-gain adjustment parameter)

This parameter adjusts the differential gain level during PID control. This gain increases the speed of response to a rapid change in deviation (difference between the process quantity and the amount of feedback).

Note that setting the gain more than necessary may cause great fluctuations in output frequency, and thus operation to become unstable.



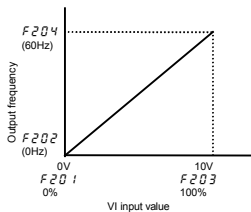
- ★ Assign an input terminal function 52 (PID integral/derivative) to an input terminal, when that input terminal is ON, it is possible to calculate integral/derivative amounts always as 0 (zero).

### 5) Adjusting feedback input

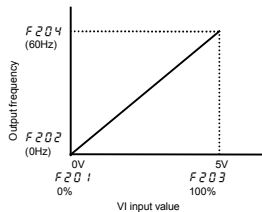
To use external analog setting (VIB) or feedback input (VIA), perform voltage-scaling adjustments (input point setting) as required. See Section 6.5.2 for further details.

If the feedback input data is too small, voltage-scaling adjustment data can also be used for gain adjustment.

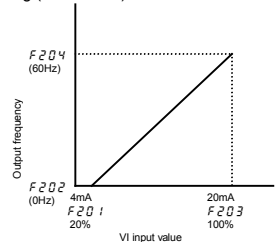
Example of 0 - 10 Vdc voltage input setting ( $F109=0$ )



Example of 0 - 5 Vdc voltage input setting ( $F109=3$ )



Example of 4 - 20 Adc voltage input setting ( $F109=1$ )



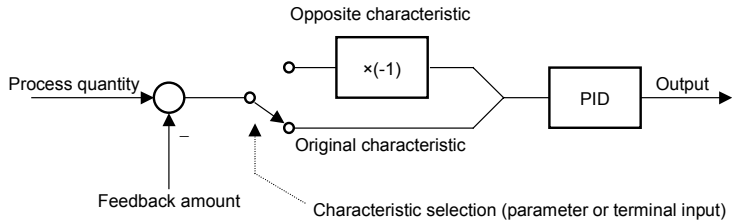
### 6) Setting the time elapsed before PID control starts

You can specify a waiting time for PID control to prevent the inverter from starting PID control before the control system becomes stable, for example, after start-up.

The inverter ignores feedback input signals, carries out operation at the frequency determined by the amount of processing for the period of time specified with  $F359$  and enters the PID control mode after a lapse of the specified time.

## 7) PID control forward/reverse characteristic switch

PID input characteristics can be reversed.



- When characteristic is reversed according to parameters  
When PID calculation reverse selection parameter  $F3B0$  is 1: Set reverse characteristics.
  - When characteristic is reversed using contact input terminal  
Input terminal function 54/55: Assign to switch PID characteristics.
- (Caution) If reverse characteristics is selected for parameter  $F3B0$  and terminal input at the same time, they become forward characteristic.

## 6.14 Setting motor constants

- F400**: Auto-tuning
- F401**: Slip frequency gain
- F402**: Automatic torque boost value
- F405**: Motor rated capacity
- F415**: Motor rated current
- F416**: Motor no-load current
- F417**: Motor rated speed
- F459**: Load moment of inertia ratio

To use vector control, automatic torque boost and automatic energy saving, motor constant setting (motor tuning) is required. The following three methods are available to set motor constants.

- 1) Using the torque boost setting macro function ( $R U 2$ ) for setting the V/F control mode selection ( $P \underline{t}$ ) and auto-tuning ( $F 4 0 0$ ) at the same time
- 2) Setting V/F control mode selection ( $P \underline{t}$ ) and auto-tuning ( $F 4 0 0$ ) independently
- 3) Combining the V/F control mode selection ( $P \underline{t}$ ) and manual tuning

**Caution:**

If the settings for V/F control mode selections  $P \underline{t}$  are  $2$ : automatic torque boost control,  $3$ : vector control,  $4$ : energy saving.

Look at the motor's name plate and set the following parameters.

- $\omega \underline{L}$ : Base frequency 1 (rated frequency)
- $\underline{U} \underline{L}$ : Base frequency voltage 1 (rated voltage)
- $F 4 0 5$ : Motor rated capacity
- $F 4 1 5$ : Motor rated current
- $F 4 1 7$ : Motor rated speed

Set the other motor constants as necessary.

## [Selection 1: Setting by parameter setting macro torque boost]

This is the easiest of the available methods. It conducts vector control and auto-tuning at the same time.

Be sure to set the motor for  $\omega L$ ,  $\omega L \omega$ ,  $F405$ ,  $F415$ ,  $F417$ .

Set  $\mathcal{A}U2$  to 1  
(Automatic torque boost + auto-tuning)

Set  $\mathcal{A}U2$  to 2  
(Vector control + auto-tuning).

Set  $\mathcal{A}U2$  to 3  
(Energy-saving + auto-tuning)

See Section 5.4 for details of the setting method.

## [Selection 2: Setting vector control and auto-tuning independently]

Set vector control, automatic torque boost, and energy saving and auto-tuning individually.

After setting  $Pt$  (V/F control mode selection), auto-tuning occurs.

Set the auto-tuning parameter  $F400$  to 2  
(Auto-tuning enabled)

## [Parameter setting]

| Title  | Function    | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|--------|-------------|--|-----------------|
| $F400$ | Auto-tuning | 0: Auto-tuning disabled (use of internal parameters)<br>1: Initialization of $F402$ (reset to 0)<br>2: Auto-tuning executed (after execution: 0) | 0               |

Set  $F400$  to 2 before the start of operation. Tuning is performed at the start of the motor.

## ★ Precautions on auto-tuning

- (1) Conduct auto-tuning only after the motor has been connected and operation completely stopped.  
If auto-tuning is conducted immediately after operation stops, the presence of a residual voltage may result in abnormal tuning.
- (2) Voltage is applied to the motor during tuning even though it barely rotates. During tuning, " $\mathcal{R}tn$ " is displayed on the operation panel.
- (3) Tuning is performed when the motor starts for the first time after  $F400$  is set to 2.  
Tuning is usually completed within three seconds. If it is aborted, the motor will trip with the display of  $\mathcal{E}tn$  and no constants will be set for that motor.
- (4) High-speed motors, high-slip motors or other special motors cannot be auto-tuned. For these motors, perform manual tuning using Selection 3 described below.
- (5) Provide cranes and hoists with sufficient circuit protection such as mechanical braking. Without sufficient circuit protection, the resulting insufficient motor torque during tuning could create a risk of machine stalling/falling.
- (6) If auto-tuning is impossible or an " $\mathcal{E}tn$ " auto-tuning error is displayed, perform manual tuning with Selection 3.

## [Selection 3: Setting vector control and manual tuning independently]

If an "E t n I" tuning error is displayed during auto-tuning or when vector control characteristics are to be improved, set independent motor constants.

| Title          | Function                                    | Adjustment range               | Default setting                    |
|----------------|---|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>F 4 0 1</i> | Slip frequency gain                         | 0-150 (%)                      | 50                                 |
| <i>F 4 0 2</i> | Automatic torque boost value                | 0.0-30.0 (%)                   | Depends on the capacity (See 11.4) |
| <i>F 4 0 5</i> | Motor's rated capacity                      | 0.01-5.50 (kW)                 |                                    |
| <i>F 4 1 5</i> | Motor rated current                         | 0.1-30.0 (A)                   |                                    |
| <i>F 4 1 6</i> | Motor no-load current                       | 10-90 (%)                      |                                    |
| <i>F 4 1 7</i> | Motor rated rotational speed                | 100-32000 (min <sup>-1</sup> ) | *1                                 |
| <i>F 4 5 9</i> | Load moment of inertia ratio                | 0.1-100.0 (times)              | 1.0                                |
| <i>t H r</i>   | Motor electronic thermal protection level 1 | 10-100 (%) / (A)               | 100                                |

\*1: Depends upon the setup menu settings.

Setting procedure Adjust the following parameters:

- F401*: Set the compensation gain for the slipping of the motor. A higher slip frequency reduces motor slipping correspondingly. After setting *F417*, set *F401* to adjust in detail. Be careful as inputting a value larger than necessary causes hunting and other unstable operation.
- F402*: Adjust the primary resistive component of the motor. Decreases in torque due to a possible voltage drop during low-speed operation can be suppressed by setting a large value in this parameter. Be careful as setting a value larger than necessary may lead to an increased current causing a trip at low speeds. (Perform adjustments according to the actual operation.)
- F405*: Set the motor's rated capacity according to the motor's name plate or test report.
- F415*: Set the rated current of the motor. For the rated current, see the motor's nameplate or test report.
- F416*: Set the ratio of the no-load current of the motor to the rated current. Enter the value in % that is obtained by dividing the no-load current specified in the motor's test report by the rated current. Increasing this value increases the excitation current.
- F417*: Set the rated rotational speed of the motor. For the rated current, see the motor's nameplate or test report.

★ Adjustment method for the moment of inertia of the load

- F459*: Adjusts the excess response speed. A larger value gives a smaller overshoot at the acceleration/deceleration completion point. In the default settings, the moment of inertia of the load (including the motor shaft) value is optimally set considering a motor shaft of 1x. When the moment of inertia of the load is not 1x, set a value that matches that actual moment of inertia of the load.
- thr*: If the rated capacity of the motor is one size smaller than that of the inverter, lower the thermal protective level according to the rated current of the motor.
- \* Sensorless vector control may not operate properly if the motor capacity differs from the applicable rated capacity of the inverter by more than two grades.

Caution:

If a combination of the inverter rating and the motor capacity is different for more than 2 items, vector control may not operate correctly.

Note 1: *F412*, *F458*, *F460*, *F461*, *F462*, *F467*, *F480*, *F485*, and *F495* (Motor specific coefficient 1-9) are parameters for manufacturer settings. Do not change the parameters.



## 6.15 2nd acceleration/deceleration

### 6.15.1 Switching acceleration/deceleration time 1 and 2

**F500**: Acceleration time 2

**F501**: Deceleration time 2

**F505**: Acceleration/deceleration 1 and 2 switching frequency

- Function

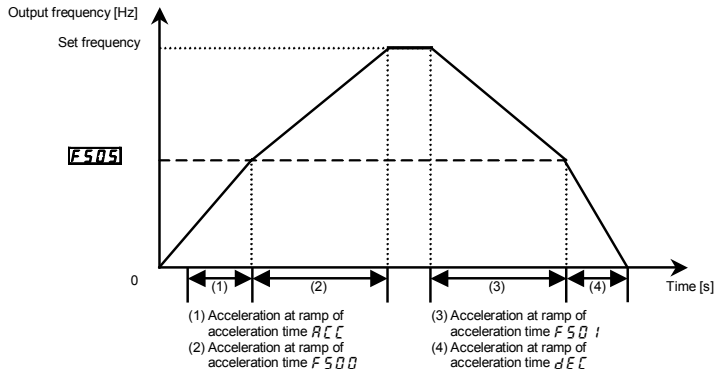
Acceleration and deceleration times can be set individually. Select from the following two methods for selecting and switching.

- 1) Switching by frequency
- 2) Switching by terminal

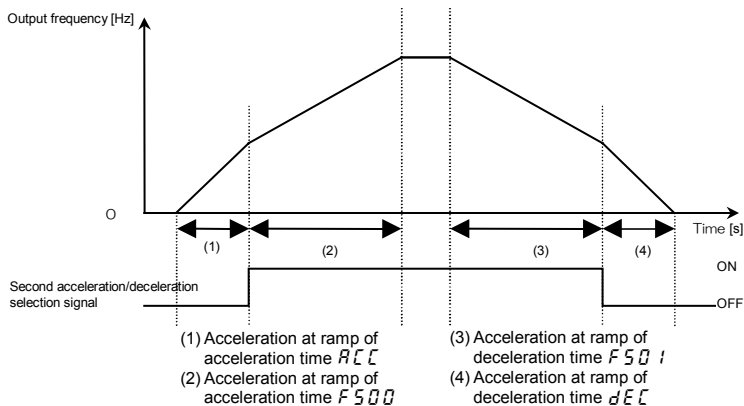
| Title       | Function            | Adjustment range | Standard defaults |
|-------------|---------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <b>F500</b> | Acceleration time 2 | 0.0 ~ 3000 (sec) | 10.0              |
| <b>F501</b> | Deceleration time 2 | 0.0 ~ 3000 (sec) | 10.0              |

1) Switching according to frequency (automatically switching from the set frequency to the acceleration/deceleration time)

| Title       | Function  | Adjustment range          | Standard defaults |
|-------------|---|---------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>F505</b> | Acceleration/deceleration 1 and 2 switching frequency | 0.0 (disabled),<br>0.1~11 | 0.0               |



## 2) Switching according to terminal (switching acceleration/deceleration time by external terminal)



### ■ Parameter configuration method

#### a) Method of operation from terminal input

Set run operation selection  $ELd$  to  $0$  (terminal block).

#### b) Set the second acceleration/deceleration switching to any input terminal.

The following shows an example of setting to input terminal S2.

| Title  | Function                         | Adjustment range | Setting  |
|--------|----------------------------------|------------------|--|
| $F114$ | Input terminal selection 4A (S2) | 0 ~ 201          | 24 (Acceleration/deceleration 2 pattern selection)<br>25 (Acceleration/deceleration 2 pattern selection reverse) |

## 6.15.2 Acceleration/deceleration pattern setting

**F502**: Acceleration/deceleration 1 pattern

**F503**: Acceleration/deceleration 2 pattern

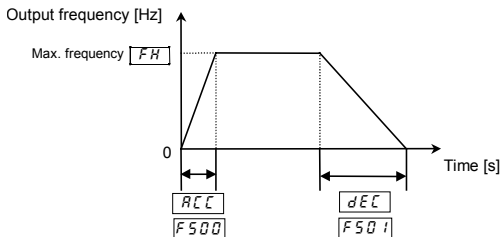
- Function  
Select a acceleration and deceleration pattern appropriate for the application.

| Title       | Function                            | Adjustment range                      | Standard defaults |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>F502</b> | Acceleration/deceleration 1 pattern | 0: Linear, 1: S-shape 1, 2: S-shape 2 | 0                 |
| <b>F503</b> | Acceleration/deceleration 2 pattern | 0: Linear, 1: S-shape 1, 2: S-shape 2 | 0                 |

### 1) Linear acceleration/deceleration

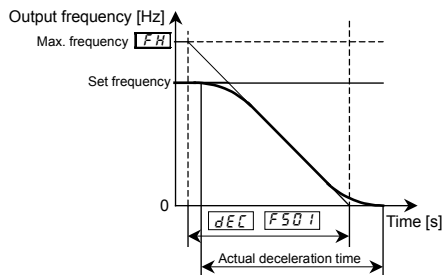
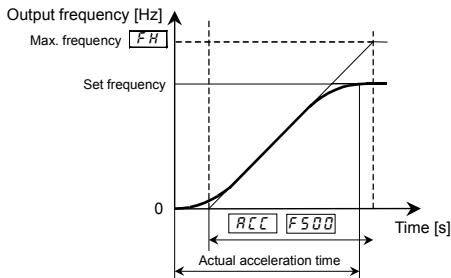
Normal acceleration/deceleration pattern.

Normally, this setting can be used.



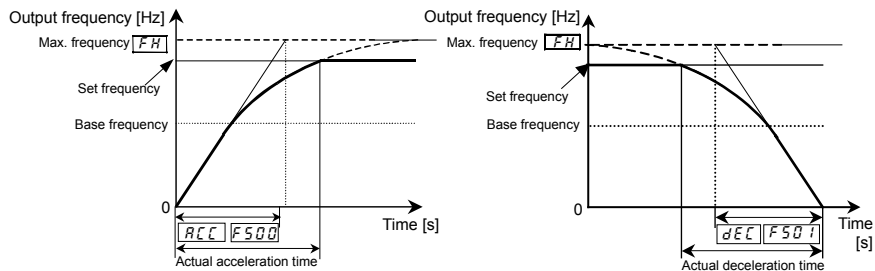
### 2) S-shape acceleration/deceleration 1

Used when necessary to accelerate or decelerate in a short period of time up to a high-speed area over 60 Hz, and to moderate shock at acceleration. Perfect for conveyance machinery.



## 3) S-shape acceleration/deceleration 2

Motor acceleration torque increases slowly in areas with a small weak magnetic field. Perfect for operation of high-speed spindles.



## 6.16 Protection functions

### 6.16.1 Setting motor electronic thermal protection

***EHr***: Motor electronic thermal protection level 1

***F173***: Motor electronic thermal protection level 2

***F507***: Motor 150% overload detection time

***F632***: Electronic thermal memory

- Function  
This parameter allows selection of the appropriate electronic thermal protection characteristics according to the particular rating and characteristics of the motor.

#### Parameter setting

| Title       | Function                                    | Adjustment range      | Default setting |
|-------------|---|-----------------------|-----------------|
| <i>EHr</i>  | Motor electronic thermal protection level 1 | 10-100 (%) / (A)      | 100             |
| <i>F173</i> | Motor electronic thermal protection level 2 | 10-100 (%) / (A)      | 100             |
| <i>F507</i> | Motor 150%-overload detection time          | 10-2400 (s)           | 300             |
| <i>F632</i> | Electrical thermal memory                   | 0: None, 1: Available | 0               |

For more details, see 3.5.



Note 1: The 100% standard value is the rated output current indicated on the nameplate.

Note 2: *F632* is a parameter for manufacturer settings. Do not change the parameters.

### 6.16.2 Setting of stall prevention level

***F507***: Stall prevention level 1

***F185***: Stall prevention level 2

|  Caution       |   |
|---|---|
| <br>Prohibited | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not set the stall prevention level (<i>F507</i>) extremely low. If the stall prevention level parameter (<i>F507</i>) is set at or below the no-load current of the motor, the stall preventive function will be always active and increase the frequency when it judges that regenerative braking is taking place. Do not set the stall prevention level parameter (<i>F507</i>) below 30% under normal use conditions.</li> </ul> |

- Function  
This parameter adjusts the output frequency by activating a current stall prevention function against a current exceeding the *F507*-specified level.

■ Parameter setting

| Title        | Function                 | Adjustment range                   | Default setting |
|--------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>F 601</i> | Stall prevention level 1 | 10-199 (%) / (A),<br>200: Disabled | 150             |
| <i>F 185</i> | Stall prevention level 2 |                                    |                 |

[Display during operation of the stall prevention]

During an  $\overline{OL}$  alarm status, (that is, when there is a current flow in excess of the stall prevention level), the output frequency changes. At the same time, to the left of this value, " $\overline{L}$ " is displayed flashing on and off.

Example of display

$\overline{L}$  50

- ★ The switching from *F 601* to *F 185* can be performed by entering a command through terminals.  
For more details, see 6.4.1.

Note. The 100% standard value is the rated output current indicated on the nameplate.

## 6.16.3 Inverter trip retention

***F 602***: Inverter trip retention selection

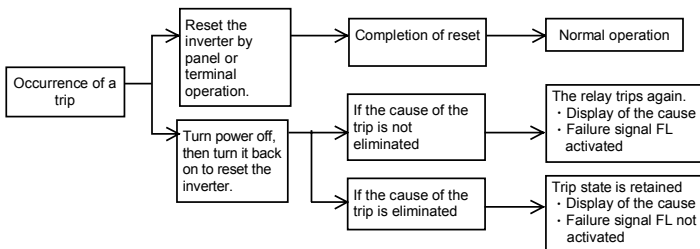
- Function  
If the inverter trips, this parameter will retain the corresponding trip information. Trip information that has thus been stored into memory can be displayed, even after power has been reset.

[Parameter setting]

| Title        | Function                          | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|---|-----------------|
| <i>F 602</i> | Inverter trip retention selection | 0: Cleared with power off<br>1: Retained with power off | 0               |

- ★ The causes of up to four trips that occurred in the past can be displayed in status monitor mode.
- ★ Data displayed in status monitor mode when the inverter is tripped is cleared when power is turned off.  
Check the details monitor for the history of past trips.
- ★ Trip records are retained even if power is turned off and turned back on during retry operation.

■ Flow of operation when  $F602 = 1$



### 6.16.4 Emergency stop

**F603**: Emergency stop

- Function  
Set the stop method for an emergency. When operation stops, a trip occurs (E displays) and failure signal FL operates. Also, when  $F603$  is set to 2 (emergency DC braking stop) set  $F251$  (DC braking amount) and  $F252$  (DC braking time).

1) Emergency stop from terminal

Emergency stop occurs at contact a or b. Follow the procedure below to assign a function to an input terminal and select a stop method.

[Parameter setting]

| Title  | Function                 | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|--------|--------------------------|--|-----------------|
| $F603$ | Emergency stop selection | 0: Coast stop<br>1: Slowdown stop<br>2: Emergency DC braking | 0               |
| $F251$ | DC braking amount        | 0 ~ 100(%)   | 50              |
| $F252$ | DC braking time          | 0.0-25.5 (sec)   | 1.0             |

Setting example) When assigning the emergency stop function to S2 terminal

| Title  | Function                         | Adjustment range | Setting  |
|--------|----------------------------------|------------------|--|
| $F114$ | Input terminal selection 4A (S2) | 0 ~ 201          | 20 (trip stop command from external device)<br>21 (trip stop command from external device reverse) |

Note 1) Emergency stopping via the specified terminal is possible, even during panel operation.

## 2) Emergency stopping from the operation panel

Emergency stopping from the operation panel is possible

by pressing the STOP key on the panel twice while the inverter is not in the panel control mode.

(1) Press the STOP key..... "E F F F" will blink.

(2) Press the STOP key once again ..... Operation will come to a trip stop in accordance with the setting of the F 5 0 3 parameter.

After this, "E" will be displayed and a failure detection signal generated (FL relay deactivated).

Note: While an emergency stop signal is input at a terminal, the trip cannot be reset. Clear the signal and then reset the trip.

## 6.16.5 Output phase failure detection

### F 5 0 5: Output phase failure detection selection

- Function

This parameter detects inverter output Phase failure. If the Phase failure status persists for one second or more, the tripping function and the FL relay will be activated. At the same time, a trip information E P H 0 will also be displayed.

Set F 5 0 5 to 2 to open the motor-inverter connection by switching commercial power operation to inverter operation.

Detection errors may occur for special motors such as high-speed motors.

F 5 0 5 = 0: No tripping (FL relay deactivated).

F 5 0 5 = 1: With the power on, the phase failure detection is enabled only at the start of the first operation. The inverter will trip if the Phase failure status persists for one second or more.

F 5 0 5 = 2: The inverter checks for output phase failures each time it starts operation. The inverter will trip if the Phase failure status persists for one second or more.

Note: A check for output phase failures is made during auto-tuning, regardless of the setting of this parameter.

| Title   | Function                                 | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|---------|--|--|-----------------|
| F 5 0 5 | Output phase failure detection selection | 0: Disabled<br>1: At start-up (only once after power on)<br>2: At start-up (each time) | 0               |



## 6.16.6 Input phase failure detection

**F608**: Input phase failure detection selection

- Function

This parameter detects inverter input Phase failure. If the abnormal voltage status of main circuit capacitor persists for few minutes or more, the tripping function and the FL relay will be activated. Trip display is *EPH 1*. Detection may not be possible when operating with a light load, or when the motor capacity is smaller than the inverter capacity.

If the power capacity is larger than the inverter capacity (more than 200kVA or more than 10 times), detection errors may occur. If this actually happens, install an AC or DC reactor.

*F608=0*: No tripping (Failure signal FL not activated)

*F608=1*: Phase failure detection is enabled during operation. The inverter will trip if the abnormal voltage status of main circuit capacitor persists for ten minutes or more. (Failure signal FL activated)

| Title       | Function                                | Adjustment range        | Default setting |
|-------------|---|-------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>F608</i> | Input phase failure detection selection | 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled | 1               |

Note1: Setting *F608* to 0 (input phase failure detection: disabled) may result in a breakage of the capacitor in the inverter main circuit if operation is continued under a heavy load in spite of the occurrence of an input phase failure.

Note2: Parameter *F608* is invalid for single-phase input model.

Note3: When operating the inverter with DC input, set *F608=0*: (none).

## 6.16.7 Control mode for small current

**F609**: Small current detection hysteresis

**F610**: Small current trip/alarm selection

**F611**: Small current detection current

**F612**: Small current detection time

- Function

When the current lower than the value set at *F611* flows for more than the time set at *F612*, tripping an alarm output are possible. Trip display is *UC*.

*F610=0*: No tripping (Failure signal FL not activated).

A small current alarm can be put out by setting the output terminal function selection parameter.

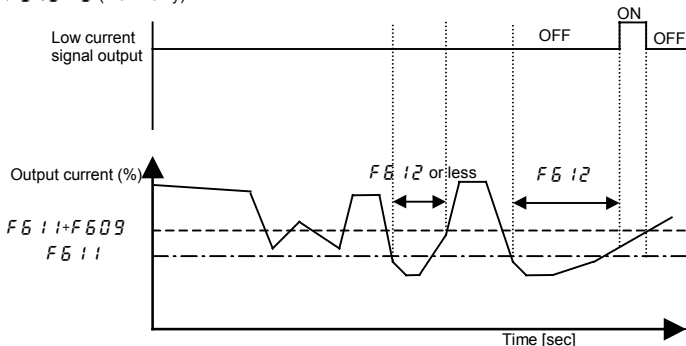
*F610=1*: The inverter will trip (Failure signal FL activated) if a current below the current set with *F611* flows for the period of time specified with *F612*.

| Title  | Function                           | Adjustment range             | Default setting |
|--------|------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|
| $F609$ | Small current detection hysteresis | 1-20 (%)                     | 10              |
| $F610$ | Small current trip/alarm selection | 0: Alarm only<br>1: Tripping | 0               |
| $F611$ | Small current detection current    | 0-150 (%) / (A)              | 0               |
| $F612$ | Small current detection time       | 0-255 [sec]                  | 0               |

<Example of operation>

Output terminal function: 26 (UC) Low current detection

$F610 = 0$  (Alarm only)



\* When setting  $F610$  to 1 (Trip), trip after low current detection time setting of  $F612$ . After tripping, the low current signal remains ON.

## 6.16.8 Detection of output short-circuit

**$F613$** : Detection of output short-circuit at start-up

- Function  
This parameter detects inverter output short-circuit. It can be usually detected in the length of the standard pulse. When operating low-impedance motor such as high-speed motor, however, select the short-time pulse.

$F613=0$ : Detection is executed in the length of the standard pulse every time you start up the inverter.

$F613=1$ : Detection is executed in the length of standard pulse only during the first start-up after putting on the power or after resetting.

$F613=2$ : Detection is executed with the short-time pulse every time you start up the inverter.

$F613=3$ : Detection is executed with the short-time pulse only for the first time after putting power on or after resetting.

| Title       | Function  | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|-------------|---|--|-----------------|
| <i>F613</i> | Detection of output short-circuit during start-up | 0: Each time (standard pulse)<br>1: Only one time after power on (standard pulse)<br>2: Each time (short pulse)<br>3: Only one time after power on (short pulse) | 0               |

## 6.16.9 Over-torque trip

***F615***: Over-torque trip/alarm selection

***F616***: Over-torque detection level

***F618***: Over-torque detection time

***F619***: Over-torque detection hysteresis

- Function  
Use the *F615* parameter to trip the inverter or to output the alarm if a torque current exceeding the *F616*-specified level flows for more than the *F618*-specified time. Trip information is displayed as "OL".

*F615*=0: ..... No tripping (FL relay deactivated).

An over-torque alarm can be put out by setting the output terminal function selection parameter.

*F615*=1: ..... The inverter is tripped (FL relay activated) only after a torque exceeding the *F616*-specified level has been detected for more than the *F618*-specified time.

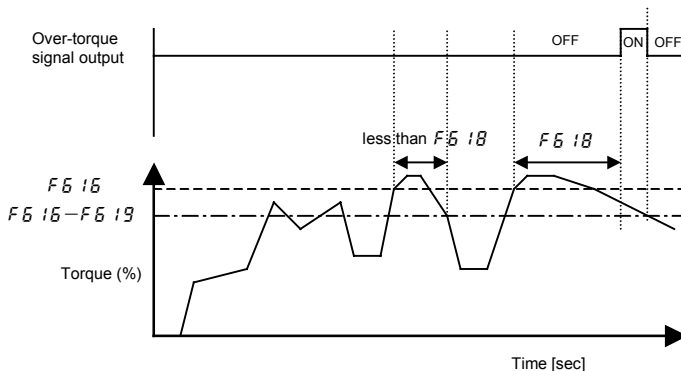
| Title       | Function                               | Adjustment range             | Default setting |
|-------------|--|------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>F615</i> | Over-torque trip/alarm selection       | 0: Alarm only<br>1: Tripping | 0               |
| <i>F616</i> | Over-torque detection level            | 0 (disabled),<br>1-200(%)    | 150             |
| <i>F618</i> | Over-torque detection time             | 0.0-10.0 [sec] Note          | 0.5             |
| <i>F619</i> | Over-torque detection level hysteresis | 0-100 (%)                    | 10              |

Note: *F618*=0.0 seconds is the shortest time detected on control.

<Example of operation>

1) Output terminal function: 28 (OT) Over-torque detection

$F615=0$  (Alarm only)



When  $F615 = 1$  (tripping), the inverter will trip if over-torque lasts for the period of time set with  $F618$ . In such a case, the over-torque signal remains ON.

## 6.16.10 Cooling fan control selection

### $F620$ : Cooling fan control selection

- Function

Set to operate the fan only when the ambient temperature is high during operation. When the inverter is on, the service life of the cooling fan is longer than if it is always running.

$F620=0$ : Cooling fan automatically controlled. Cooling fan operates only when the ambient temperature is high during operation.

$F620=1$ : Cooling fan not automatically controlled. Fan is always running when the inverter is on.

★ If the ambient temperature is high, even when the inverter is stopped, the cooling fan automatically operates.

| Title  | Function                   | Adjustment range                | Standard defaults |
|--------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| $F620$ | Cooling fan ON/OFF control | 0: ON/OFF control, 1: Always ON | 0                 |

## 6.16.11 Cumulative operation time alarm setting

### **F621**: Cumulative operation time alarm setting

- Function

This parameter allows you to set the inverter so that it will put out an alarm signal after a lapse of the cumulative operation time set with **F621**.

\* "0.1" displayed on the monitor refers to 10 hours, and therefore "1" denotes 100 hours.

Ex.: 38.5 displayed on the monitor = 3850 (hours)

| Title       | Function                                | Adjustment range | Default setting |
|-------------|---|------------------|-----------------|
| <b>F621</b> | Cumulative operation time alarm setting | 0.0-9.999        | 610.0           |

- Setting of output signal I

Ex.: When assigning the cumulative operation alarm signal output function to the OUT terminal

| Title       | Function                              | Adjustment range | Setting  |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|------------------|--|
| <b>F130</b> | Output terminal selection 1A (OUT-NO) | 0-255            | 56 (cumulative operation time alarm)<br>57 (cumulative operation time alarm reverse) |

## 6.16.12 Undervoltage trip

### **F627**: Undervoltage trip/alarm selection

- Function

This parameter is used for selecting the control mode when an undervoltage is detected. Trip information is displayed as "UP I".

**F627=0**: The inverter is stopped. However, it is not tripped (Failure signal FL not activated).

The inverter is stopped when the voltage does not exceed 64 % or less of its rating.

**F627=1**: Inverter is stopped. It is also tripped (Failure signal FL activated), only after detection of a voltage not exceeding 64% or less of its rating.

**F627=2**: Inverter is stopped. However, it is not tripped (Failure signal FL not activated). The inverter stop (Failure signal FL not activated.), only after detection of a voltage not exceeding 50% of its rating. Be sure to connect the AC reactor specified in 10.4.

| Title       | Function                          | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|--|-----------------|
| <b>F627</b> | Undervoltage trip/alarm selection | 0: Alarm only (detection level below 64%)<br>1: Tripping (detection level below 64%)<br>2: Alarm only (detection level below 50%, AC reactor needed) | 0               |

### 6.16.13 VI analog input break detection

**F633**: VI analog input break detection level

- Function  
The inverter will trip if the VIA value remains below the specified value for about 0.3 seconds. In such a case, "E-1B" is displayed.

F633=0: Disabled .....Not detected.

F633=1-100 .....The inverter will trip if the VI input remains below the specified value for about 0.3 seconds.

| Title | Function                              | Adjustment range      | Default setting |
|-------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| F633  | VI analog input break detection level | 0: Disabled<br>1-100% | 0               |

Note : The VIA input value may be judged earlier to be abnormal, depending on the degree of deviation of the analog data detected.


### 6.16.14 Parts replacement alarms

**F634**: Annual average ambient temperature (Parts replacement alarms)

- Function  
You can set the inverter so that it will calculate the remaining useful lives of the cooling fan, main circuit capacitor and on-board capacitor from the ON time of the inverter, the operating time of the motor, the output current (load factor) and the setting of F634, and that it will display and send out an alarm through output terminals when each component is approaching the time of replacement.

| Title | Function  | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|-------|---|---|-----------------|
| F634  | Annual average ambient temperature (parts replacement alarms) | 1: -10 to +10°C<br>2: 11-20°C<br>3: 21-30°C<br>4: 31-40°C<br>5: 41-50°C<br>6: 51-60°C | 3               |

- ★ Display of part replacement alarm information  
Part replacement alarm information (See page H-3) in the Status monitor mode allows you to check on the time of replacement.

An example of display: 

- ★ Output of part replacement alarm signal  
The parts replacement alarm is assigned to the output terminal.

Setup example) When the parts replacement alarm is assigned to the OUT terminal

| Title | Function                              | Adjustment range | Setting value  |
|-------|---------------------------------------|------------------|--|
| F130  | Output terminal selection 1A (OUT-NO) | 0 ~ 255          | 128 (parts replacement alarm)<br>129 (parts replacement alarm reverse) |

Note 1: Using F634, enter the annual average temperature around the inverter. Be careful not to enter the annual highest temperature.

Note 2: Set F634 at the time of installation of the inverter, and do not change its setting after the start of use. Changing the setting may cause parts replacement alarm calculation error.

## 6.17 Adjustment parameters

### 6.17.1 Pulse train output for meters

**F669**: Logic output/pulse train output selection (OUT-NO)

**F676**: Pulse train output function selection (OUT-NO)

**F677**: Maximum numbers of pulse train

- Function  
Pulse trains can be sent out through the OUT-NO output terminals.  
To do so, it is necessary to select a pulse output mode and specify the number of pulses.

Ex.: When operations frequencies (0 to 60Hz) are put out by means of 0 to 600 pulses

$$FH=60.0, F669=1, F676=0, F677=0.60$$

| Title       | Function   | Adjustment range   | Reference of maximum value of <b>F677</b>  | Default setting |
|-------------|--|--|--|-----------------|
| <b>F669</b> | Logic output/pulse train output selection (OUT-NO) | 0: Logic output<br>1: Pulse train output   | -  | 0               |
| <b>F676</b> | Pulse train output function selection (OUT-NO)     | 0: Output frequency<br>1: Output current<br>2: Set frequency<br>3: Input voltage (DC detection)<br>4: Output voltage command value<br>5-11: -<br>12: Frequency setting value (after correction)<br>13: VI input value<br>14: -<br>15: Fixed output 1 (Output current: 100% equivalent)<br>16: Fixed output 2 (Output current: 50% equivalent)<br>17: Fixed output 3 (Other than the output current: 100% equivalent)<br>18: Communication data<br>19-22: - | <i>FH</i><br>185%<br><i>FH</i><br>150%<br>150%<br>-<br><i>FH</i><br>10 V/20 mA<br>-<br>185%<br>185%<br>100%<br>100.0%<br>- | 0               |
| <b>F677</b> | Maximum numbers of pulse train                     | 0.50-1.60 (kpps)   | -  | 0.8             |

★ Digital panel meter for reference  
Type: K3MA-F (OMRON)  
Connection terminal: OUT-E4, NO-E5

Note 1: When item of **F676** reaches "Reference of max. value", the number of pulse train set by **F677** are sent to output terminals (OUT-NO)

Note 2: The pulse ON/OFF duty ratio is fixed at 50%.

Note 3: The minimum pulse output rate is 25 pps. Keep in mind that no pulses can be put out at any rate smaller than 25 pps.

Note 4:  $F676 = i^2$  is the motor drive frequency.

## 6.17.2 Calibration of analog output

**F681**: Analog output signal selection

**F691**: Inclination characteristic of analog output

**F692**: Analog output bias

- Function

Output signal from the FM terminal can be switched between 0 to 1 mA dc output, 0 to 20 mA dc output, and 0 to 10 V dc output with the **F681** setting. The standard setting is 0 to 1 mA dc output.

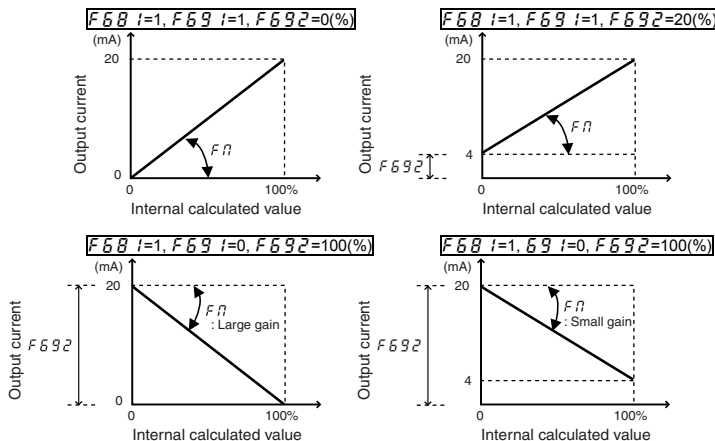
\* Optional frequency meter: When using QS60T, set **F681** = 0 (meter option (0 to 1 mA) output).

| Title       | Function                                    | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|-------------|---|---|-----------------|
| <b>F681</b> | Analog output signal selection              | 0: Meter option (0 to 1 mA) output<br>1: Current (0 to 20 mA) output<br>2: Voltage (0 to 10 V) output | 0               |
| <b>F691</b> | Inclination characteristic of analog output | 0: Negative inclination (downward slope)<br>1: Positive inclination (upward slope)                    | 1               |
| <b>F692</b> | Analog output bias                          | -1.0 - +100.0%  | 0               |

Note 1: With 0 to 20 mA dc (4 to 20 mA dc) output, or 0 to 10 V dc output, set **F681** to 1 or 2.

Note 2: **F678**, **F684**, and **F693** are parameters for manufacturer settings. Do not change this parameter.

### Example of setting



★ The analog output inclination can be adjusted using the parameter **F691**.



## 6.18 Operation panel parameter

### 6.18.1 Prohibition of key operations and parameter settings

**F700**: Parameter write protection selection

**F730**: Panel frequency setting prohibition (FC)

**F732**: Local / remote operation prohibition for remote keypad

**F733**: Panel operation prohibition (RUN/STOP keys)

**F734**: Prohibition of panel emergency stop operation

**F735**: Prohibition of panel reset operation

**F736**: *CR0dIFR0d* change prohibition during operation

**F738**: Password setting (**F700**)

**F739**: Password examination

- Function

These parameters allow you to prohibit or allow operation of the RUN and STOP keys on the operation panel and the change of parameters. Using these parameters, you can also prohibit various key operations. Lock parameters with a password to prevent configuration.

[Parameter setting]

| Title       | Function   | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|-------------|--|---|-----------------|
| <b>F700</b> | Parameter write protection selection                   | 0: Permitted<br>1: Panel and extension panel prohibited<br>2: 1 or RS485 communication prohibited | 0               |
| <b>F730</b> | Panel frequency setting prohibition (FC)               | 0: Permitted, 1: Prohibited   | 0               |
| <b>F732</b> | Local / remote operation prohibition for remote keypad | 0: Permitted, 1: Prohibited   | 1               |
| <b>F733</b> | Panel operation prohibition (RUN/STOP keys)            | 0: Permitted, 1: Prohibited   | 0               |
| <b>F734</b> | Prohibition of panel emergency stop operation          | 0: Permitted, 1: Prohibited   | 0               |
| <b>F735</b> | Prohibition of panel reset operation                   | 0: Permitted, 1: Prohibited   | 0               |
| <b>F736</b> | <i>CR0dIFR0d</i> change prohibition during operation   | 0: Permitted, 1: Prohibited   | 1               |
| <b>F738</b> | Password setting ( <b>F700</b> )                       | 0: No password set<br>1-9998<br>9999: Password set  | 0               |
| <b>F739</b> | Password examination                                   | 0: No password set<br>1-9998<br>9999: Password set  | 0               |

When protection using a password is necessary, set and remove with the following method.

### ■ Password setup method

Preparation: Parameters other than  $F\ 700$ ,  $F\ 738$ , and  $F\ 739$  cannot be changed when  $F\ 700$  is set to  $1$  or  $2$ .

- (1) When  $F\ 738$  or  $F\ 739$  are read out and the value is  $0$ , a password is not set. A password can be set.
- (2) When  $F\ 738$  or  $F\ 739$  are read out and the value is  $9999$ , a password is already set.
- (3) If a password is not set, one can be set. Select and register a value between  $1$  and  $9998$  for  $F\ 738$ . The number becomes the password. It must be entered to remove the password, so do not forget it.
- (4) The settings for parameter  $F\ 700$  cannot be changed.

Note: If you forget the password, it cannot be removed. Do not forget this password as we cannot retrieve it.

### ■ Password examination method

- (1) When  $F\ 738$  or  $F\ 739$  are read out and the value is  $9999$ , a password is set. Changing the parameter requires removing the password.
- (2) Enter a the number ( $1$  to  $9998$ ) registered to  $F\ 738$  when the password was set for  $F\ 739$ .
- (3) If the password matches,  $PRSS$  blinks on the display and the password is removed.
- (4) If the password is incorrect,  $FR!!$  blinks on the display and  $F\ 739$  is displayed again.
- (5) When the password is removed, the setting for parameter  $F\ 700$  can be changed.
- (6) By setting parameter  $F\ 700=0$ , the settings of all parameters can be changed.

When protecting a parameter is necessary with the external contact input terminal, set with the following method.

### ■ Prohibit changing parameter settings with contact input

Set "Parameter editing prohibited" for any input terminal.

Activating the "Parameter editing prohibited" function prevents changes to all parameters.

The following table shows an example of setting input terminal S2.

| Title    | Function                         | Adjustment range | Setting value  |
|----------|----------------------------------|------------------|--|
| $F\ 114$ | Input terminal selection 4A (S2) | 0-201            | 200 (parameter editing prohibited)<br>201 (parameter editing prohibited reverse) |

## 6.18.2 Changing the unit (A/V) from a percentage of current and voltage

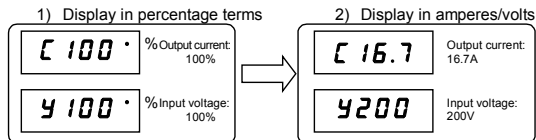
### **F701**: Current/voltage unit selection

- Function  
These parameters are used to change the unit of monitor display.  
% ⇔ A (ampere)/V (volt)

Current 100% = Rated current of inverter  
 100 V class: Input voltage 100% = 100 Vac  
                   Output voltage 100% = 200 Vac  
 200 V class: Input/output voltage 100% = 200 Vac

#### ■ Example of setting

During the operation of the VFNC3-2037P (rated current: 16.7A) at the rated load (100% load), units are displayed as follows:



| Title        | Function                       | Adjustment range               | Default setting |
|--------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>F 701</b> | Current/voltage unit selection | 0: %<br>1: A (ampere)/V (volt) | 0               |

\* The **F 701** converts the following parameter settings:

- A display
  - Current monitor display: Load current, torque current  
Motor electronic-thermal protection level 1 and 2  
*t H r, F 173*
  - DC braking current *F 251*
  - Stall prevention level 1 and 2 *F 501, F 185*
  - Small current detection current *F 611*
- V display: Input voltage, output voltage  
Note) Base frequency voltage 1 and 2 (*U L U, F 171*)s always displayed in the unit of V.

## 6.18.3 Displaying the motor or the line speed

**F702**: Free unit display scale

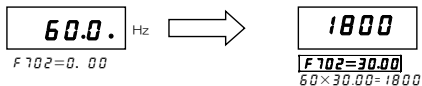
- Function  
The frequency or any other item displayed on the monitor can be converted freely into the rotational speed of the motor, the operating speed of the load, and so on.

The value obtained by multiplying the displayed frequency by the **F702**-set value will be displayed as follows:

$$\text{Value displayed} = \text{Monitor-displayed or parameter-set frequency} \times \text{F702}$$

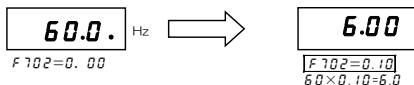
### 1) Displaying the motor speed

To switch the display mode from 60Hz (default setting) to 1800min<sup>-1</sup> (the rotating speed of the 4P motor)



### 2) Displaying the speed of the loading unit

To switch the display mode from 60Hz (default setting) to 6m/min<sup>-1</sup> (the speed of the conveyer)



Note: This parameter displays the inverter output frequency as the value obtained by multiplying it by a positive number. This does not mean that the actual motor speed or line speed are indicated with accuracy.

| Title        | Function                | Adjustment range                                    | Default setting |
|--------------|-------------------------|---|-----------------|
| <i>F 702</i> | Free unit display scale | 0.00: Disabled (display of frequency)<br>0.01-200.0 | 0.00            |

\* The *F 702* converts the following parameter settings:

- Free unit      Frequency monitor display      Operation frequency command, Operation frequency, PID feedback, Frequency command value After correction, Operation frequency command at trip

Frequency-related parameters

*FL, FH, UL, LL, Sr 1 ~ Sr 7,  
F 100, F 101, F 102, F 202, F 204,  
F 240, F 241, F 242, F 250, F 265,  
F 267, F 268, F 270, F 271,  
F 287 ~ F 294, F 391, F 505, F 707*

## 6.18.4 Changing the steps in which the value increment

***F 707***: Free step 1 (1-step rotation of setting dial)

- Function

It is possible to change the step width changed at panel frequency setting.

This function is useful when only running with frequencies of intervals of 1 Hz, 5 Hz, and 10 Hz units.

Note 1: The settings of these parameters have no effect when the free unit selection (*F 702*) is enabled.

Note 2: Set *F 707* to other than 0. When increasing the frequency by rotating the setting dial and if *FH* (max. frequency) is exceeded by rotating 1 step more, be careful as the *H I* alarm displays before this happens and the frequency cannot be increased beyond this point.

Similarly, when rating the settings dial to lower the frequency, if the rotating 1 step more lowers it below *LL* (lower limit frequency), the *LL* alarm displays before this happens and the frequency cannot be lowered beyond this point.

| Title        | Function                                    | Adjustment range                       | Default setting |
|--------------|---|--|-----------------|
| <i>F 707</i> | Free step (1-step rotation of setting dial) | 0.00: Disabled<br>0.01- <i>FH</i> (Hz) | 0.00            |

### ■ Operation example

*F 707* = 0.00 (disabled)

By rotating the setting dial 1 step, the panel frequency command value changes only 0.1 Hz.

When *F 707* = 10.00 (Hz) is set

Rotating the setting dial 1 step changes the panel frequency command value in 10.00 Hz increments, from 0.00 up to 60.00 (Hz).

## 6.18.5 Changing the initial display of the panel

**F710**: Initial panel display selection

**F720**: Initial remote keypad display selection

- Function  
This parameter specifies display format while power is on.

### ■ Changing the display format while power is on

When the power is on, the standard monitor mode displays the operation frequency (default setting) in the format of "0.0" or "0.FF". This format can be changed to any other monitor display format by setting **F710**. This new format, however, will not display an assigned prefix such as  $\xi$  or  $\zeta$ . When ON, the display of the extension panel is set at **F720**.

★ When On, the main panel and the extension panel can be set to display differently.

#### ■ Parameter setting

| Title       | Function                                | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|-------------|---|--|-----------------|
| <b>F710</b> | Initial panel display selection         | 0: Operation frequency (Hz/free unit)<br>1: Frequency command (Hz/free unit)<br>2: Output current (%A) | 0               |
| <b>F720</b> | Initial remote keypad display selection | 3-17:-<br>18: Arbitrary display according to communication   | 0               |

★ **F710** For details on **F720=18**, see the Communications Function Instruction Manual.

## 6.18.6 Changing display of the status monitor

**F711** ~ **F716**: Status monitor 1 to 6

Change monitor display items in the status monitor mode.

⇒For details, see chapter 8.

## 6.18.7 Parameter registration to easy setting mode

**F751** ~ **F774**: Easy setting mode parameter 1 to 24

Up to 24 arbitrary parameters can be registered to easy setting mode.

⇒See 4.5 for details.

## 6.19 Communication function (RS485)

|  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| <b>F800</b> : Baud rate                                  | <b>F870</b> : Block write data 1 |
| <b>F801</b> : Parity                                     | <b>F871</b> : Block write data 2 |
| <b>F802</b> : Inverter number                            | <b>F875</b> : Block read data 1  |
| <b>F803</b> : Communication time-out time                | <b>F876</b> : Block read data 2  |
| <b>F804</b> : Communication time-out action              | <b>F877</b> : Block read data 3  |
| <b>F808</b> : Communication time-out detection condition | <b>F878</b> : Block read data 4  |
| <b>F829</b> : Selection of communication protocol        | <b>F879</b> : Block read data 5  |

For details, see the Communications Function Instruction Manual (E6581657).

- **Function**  
2-wire RS485 communication is built-in as standard.  
Connect with the host to create a network for transmitting data between multiple inverters. A computer link function is available.  
<Computer-linking functions>  
The following functions are enabled by data communication between the computer and inverter
    - (1) Monitoring inverter status (such as the output frequency, current, and voltage)
    - (2) Sending RUN, STOP and other control commands to the inverter
    - (3) Reading, editing and writing inverter parameter settings
  - ★ **Timer function**      ...Function used to detect cable interruptions during communication.  
When data is not sent even once to the inverter during a user-defined period of time, an inverter trip (E r 5 is displayed on the panel) or an output terminal alarm can be output.
  - ★ **Broadcast communication function**      ...Function used to send a command (data write) to multiple inverters with a single communication.
- ★ 2-wire RS485 communication option is as follows.
- (1) USB communication exchange unit (Type: USB001Z)  
Cable for communication between the inverter and the unit (Type: CAB0011 (1m), CAB0013 (3m), CAB0015 (5m))  
Cable for communication between the unit and computer: Use a commercially available USB 1.1 or 2.0 cable. (Type: A-B, Cable length: 0.25 to 1.5 m)
  - (2) Parameter writer (Type: RKP002Z)  
Communication cable (Type: CAB0011 (1m), CAB0013 (3m), CAB0015 (5m))
  - (3) Extension panel (Type: RKP007Z)  
Communication cable (Type: CAB0071 (1m), CAB0073 (3m), CAB0075 (5m))  
However, when using a 5m cable, the core must be inserted.  
Core type: ESD-SR-120 (Manufacturer: NEC Tokin Corp.)

### ■ Settings for run/stop via communication

| Title        | Function               | Adjustment range | Standard defaults | Setting example          |
|--------------|------------------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Cr00d</i> | Command mode selection | 0~2              | 1 (panel)         | 2 (RS485 communications) |

### ■ Settings for speed command via communication

| Title       | Function                         | Adjustment range | Standard defaults | Setting example          |
|-------------|----------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>F00d</i> | Frequency setting mode selection | 0 ~ 5            | 2 (Setting dial)  | 3 (RS485 communications) |

### ■ Communication function parameters (2-wire RS485 communication)

Communication speed, parity, inverter number, and communication error trip time settings can be changed via panel operations or communication.

| Title       | Function                                   | Adjustment range  | Default setting |
|-------------|--|---|-----------------|
| <i>F000</i> | Baud rate                                  | 3: 9600bps<br>4: 19200bps<br>5: 38400bps  | 4               |
| <i>F001</i> | Parity                                     | 0: NON (No parity)<br>1: EVEN (Even parity)<br>2: ODD (Odd parity)  | 1               |
| <i>F002</i> | Inverter number                            | 0-247   | 0               |
| <i>F003</i> | Communication time-out time                | 0: Disabled (*)<br>1-100 (s)  | 0.0             |
| <i>F004</i> | Communication time-out action              | 0: Alarm only<br>1: Trip (coast stop)<br>2: Trip (slowdown stop)  | 0               |
| <i>F008</i> | Communication time-out detection condition | 0: Always<br>1: When <i>F00d</i> or <i>Cr00d</i> is selected for communication<br>2: 1+ during operation                | 1               |
| <i>F029</i> | Selection of communication protocol        | 0: Toshiba inverter protocol<br>1: ModbusRTU protocol   | 0               |
| <i>F070</i> | Block write data 1                         | 0: No selection<br>1: Command information<br>2: -<br>3: Frequency setting value<br>4: Output data on the terminal board | 0               |
| <i>F071</i> | Block write data 2                         | 5: Analog output for communication  | 0               |



| Title       | Function          | Adjustment range   | Default setting |
|-------------|-------------------|--|-----------------|
| <i>F875</i> | Block read data 1 | 0: No selection<br>1: Status information                         | 0               |
| <i>F876</i> | Block read data 2 | 2: Output frequency<br>3: Output current                         | 0               |
| <i>F877</i> | Block read data 3 | 4: Output voltage<br>5: Alarm information                        | 0               |
| <i>F878</i> | Block read data 4 | 6: PID feedback value<br>7: Input terminal board monitor         | 0               |
| <i>F879</i> | Block read data 5 | 8: Output terminal board monitor<br>9: VI terminal board monitor | 0               |

- \* Disabled..... Indicates that the inverter will not be tripped even if a communication error occurs.
- Trip.....The inverter trips when a communication time-over occurs.  
In this case a trip information  $E r 5$  flashes on and off on the operation panel.
- Alarm.....When a communication time-over occurs, an alarm can be output from the output terminal.  
Output terminal function: 78 (RS485 communication error) or 79 (RS485 communication error reverse)

## ■ Communication function settings

Commands and frequency settings are given priority by communication. (Prioritized by commands from the panel or terminal block.) Thus, command and frequency settings from communication are activated, regardless of the command mode selection ( $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{N} \mathcal{D} \mathcal{d}$ ) or frequency settings mode selection settings ( $F \mathcal{N} \mathcal{D} \mathcal{d}$ ).

However, setting 48: SCLC (switching from communication to local) with input terminal function selection and when inputting from an external device, it is possible to operate at command mode selection ( $\mathcal{L} \mathcal{N} \mathcal{D} \mathcal{d}$ ) and frequency setting mode selection ( $F \mathcal{N} \mathcal{D} \mathcal{d}$ ) settings.

Moreover, connecting the optional extension panel and selecting local mode with the LOC/REM key changes to panel frequency/panel operation mode.

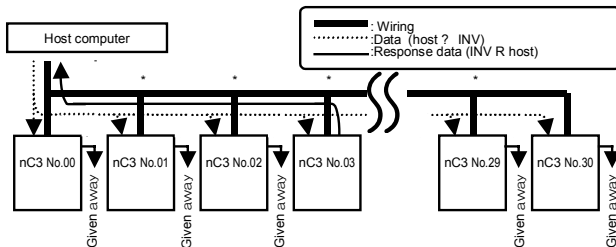
## ■ Transmission specifications

| Item                            | Specifications  |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Interface                       | RS485 compliant   |
| Transmission path configuration | Half duplex [path type (end terminal resistance necessary at both ends of system)]  |
| Wiring                          | 2-wire  |
| Transmission distance           | 500 m max. (total length)   |
| Connection terminals            | 32 max. (including upper host computer) Inverters connected in the system: 32 max.  |
| Synchronization                 | Asynchronous  |
| Transmission speed              | Default: 19200 bps (parameter setting) 9600/19200/38400 bps selectable  |
| Transmission character          | ASCII mode ... JIS X 0201 8-bit (ASCII)<br>Binary code ... Binary code, 8-bit fixed   |
| Stop bit length                 | INV reception: 1-bit, INV sending: 2-bit  |
| Error detection                 | Battery Even number/odd number/non Selection (parameter setting), checksum  |
| Error correction                | None  |
| Response monitoring             | None  |
| Transmission character type     | Reception: 11-bit, Sending: 12-bit (when there is parity)   |
| Other                           | Inverter operation at communication time-over: Select from trip/alarm/none<br>→ When alarm is selected, an alarm is output from the output terminal.<br>When trip is selected, $\mathcal{E} \mathcal{r} \mathcal{r} \mathcal{S}$ blinks on the panel. |

## ■ Connection example when using the computer link function

<Independent communication>

Perform computer-inverter connection as follows to send operation frequency commands from the host computer to inverter No. 3:



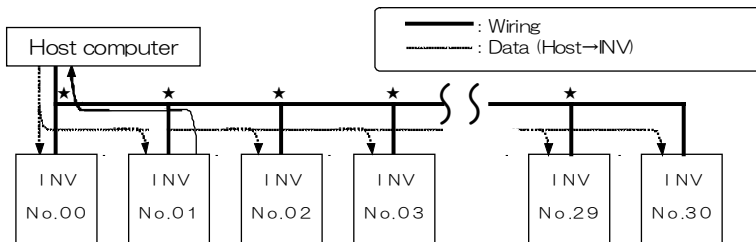
"Given away": Only the inverter with the selected inverter number conducts data processing. All other inverters, even if they have received the data, give it away and stand by to receive the next data.

\* : Use the terminal board to branch the cable.

- (1) Data is sent from the host computer.
- (2) Data from the computer is received at each inverter and the inverter numbers are checked.
- (3) The command is decoded and processed only by the inverter with the selected inverter number.
- (4) The selected inverter responds by sending the processing results, together with its own inverter number, to the host computer.
- (5) As a result, only the selected inverter starts operating in accordance with the operation frequency command by communicating independently.

<Broadcast communication>

When sending an operation frequency command via a broadcast from the host computer



★ : Split the cable among terminal blocks.

- (1) Send data from the host computer.
- (2) The inverters receive data from the host computer and the inverter number is checked.
- (3) When \* is next to the position of an inverter number, it is judged a broadcast. The command is decoded and processed.
- (4) To prevent data conflicts, only inverters where \* is overwritten to 0 can reply with data to the host computer.
- (5) As a result, all inverters are operating with the broadcast operation frequency command.

Note: Specify inverter numbers by group for group broadcasts.

(Function only for ASCII mode. For parity mode, see the Communications Function Instruction Manual.)

(Ex) When \*1 is set, inverters 01, 11, 21, 31 to 91 can be broadcast to.

In this case, the inverter specified in 01 can reply.

## 6.20 Free memo

**F880**: Free memo

- Function  
To enable easier management and maintenance of the inverter, it is possible to enter the identification number.

### Parameter settings

| Title | Function  | Adjustment range | Standard defaults |
|-------|-----------|------------------|-------------------|
| F880  | Free memo | 0~65535          | 0                 |

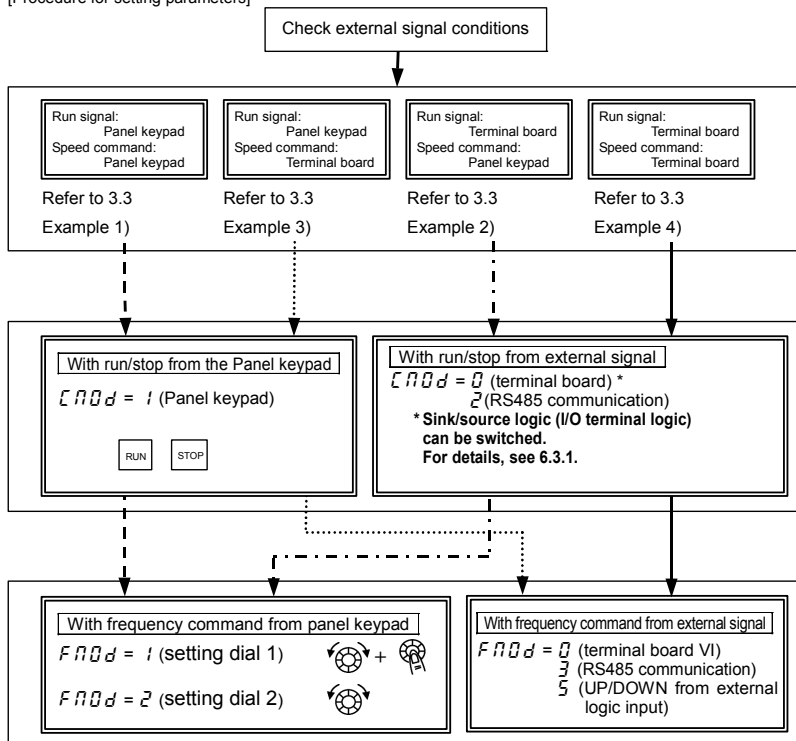
# 7. Operations with external signal

## 7.1 Operating external signals

You can control the inverter externally.

The parameter settings differ depending upon your method of operation. Determine your method of operation (the operational signal input method, speed command input method) before using the procedure below to set the parameters.

[Procedure for setting parameters]



\* For settings based on communication, refer to the Communication Instruction Manual or section 6.22.

## 7.2 Applied operations by an I/O signal (operation from the terminal block)

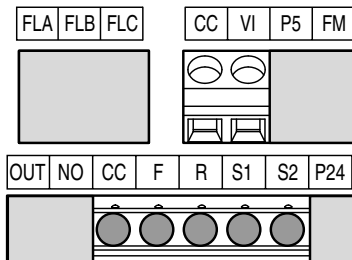
Input terminal sink and source logic are set according to the selection on the setup menu. (See 3.1.)

### 7.2.1 Input terminal function

This function is used to send a signal to the input terminal from an external programmable controller to operate or configure the inverter.

The ability to select from a variety of functions allows for flexible system design.

[Control terminal board]



### ■ Settings for the contact input terminal function

| Terminal symbol | Title   | Function                                      | Adjustment range   | Standard defaults |
|-----------------|---------|---|--|-------------------|
| F               | F 1 1 1 | Input terminal selection 1A (F)               | 0 to 201 Note 1)   | 2 (F)             |
|                 | F 1 5 1 | Input terminal selection 1B (F)               |  | 0 (No function)   |
|                 | F 1 5 5 | Input terminal selection 1C (F)               |  | 0 (No function)   |
| R               | F 1 1 2 | Input terminal selection 2A (R)               | 0 to 201 Note 1)   | 4 (R)             |
|                 | F 1 5 2 | Input terminal selection 2B (R)               |  | 0 (No function)   |
|                 | F 1 5 6 | Input terminal selection 2C (R)               |  | 0 (No function)   |
| S1              | F 1 1 3 | Input terminal selection 3A (S1)              | 0 to 201 Note 1)   | 10 (SS1)          |
|                 | F 1 5 3 | Input terminal selection 3B (S1)              |  | 0 (No function)   |
| S2              | F 1 1 4 | Input terminal selection 4A (S2)              | 0 to 201 Note 1)   | 12 (SS2)          |
|                 | F 1 5 4 | Input terminal selection 4B (S2)              |  | 0 (No function)   |
| VI              | F 1 0 9 | Analog/logic input<br>Selection (VI terminal) | 0: Voltage signal input (0 - 10 V)<br>1: Current signal input (4 - 20 mA)<br>2: Logic input<br>3: Voltage signal input (0 - 5 V) | 0                 |
|                 | F 1 1 5 | Input terminal selection 5                    |  | 8 to 55 Note 3)   |

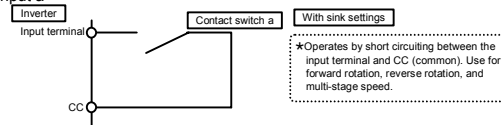
Note 1) Multiple functions assigned to a single terminal operate simultaneously.

Note 2) In case of setting always active function, assign the menu number to F 1 0 9 and F 1 1 0 (always active function selection).

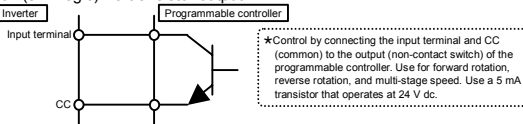
Note 3) When VI is used for the logic input (sink logic), always connect a resistor between VI and terminal P24. For details, see 2.3.2 (page B-9).

■ Connecting

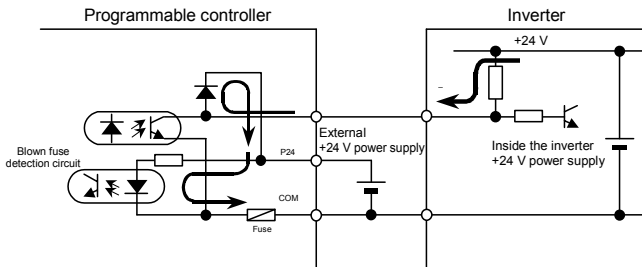
- 1) For contact input a



- 2) For connection (sink logic) via transistor output

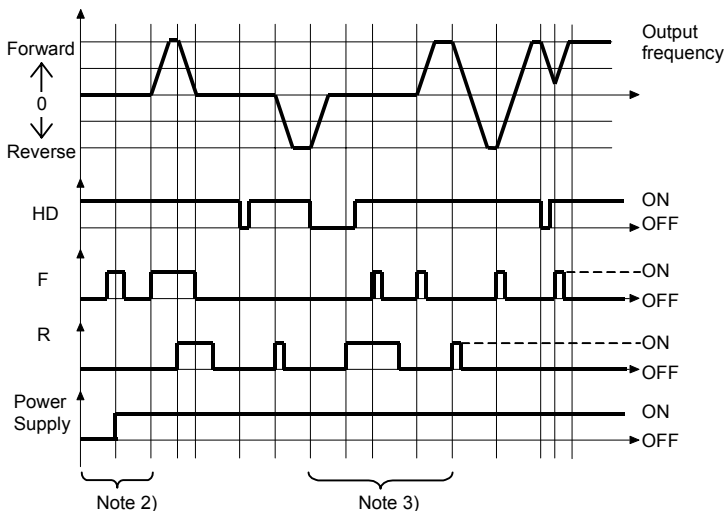
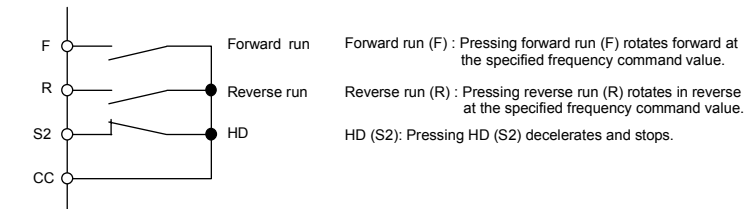


\* About programmable controllers and interfaces If controlling the inverter using an open collector output programmable controller, the following error signals are sent to the inverter. This is a result of differences in the height of control power supply potential when the inverter remains ON and the programmable controller is turned OFF. Always set the inverter lock to prevent the programmable controller from being turned OFF while the inverter is ON.



## ■ Usage example 1 ... 3-wire operation (one-push operation)

Use the 3-wire operation function to operate the inverter, maintaining operation without using the sequence circuit by inputting an external signal (reset contact signal).



Note 1) Set  $F110 = 5$  (ST: standby) and  $F10d = 0$  (terminal board) for 3 wire operation. Assign HD (operation hold) to any input terminal at input terminal selection. When assigning the S2 terminal as shown above, set  $F114 = 50$  (HD: operation hold).

Note 2) If the terminals are ON before turning on the power, terminal input is ignored when the power is turned ON. (Prevents sudden movements.) After turning the power ON, turn terminal input ON again.

Note 3) When HD is OFF, F and R are ignored even when ON. R does not operate even if it's ON when HD is ON. Likewise in this state, F does not operate even if it's ON. Turn F and R OFF and then turn them ON.



Note 4) During 3 wire operation, sending the jog run mode command stops operation.

Note 5) Be aware that DC braking continues even if a startup signal is input during DC braking.

Note 6) Only F and R maintain HD (operation hold). When using F or R in combination with other functions, be aware that the other functions do not hold. For example, when F and SS1 are assigned, F holds, but SS1 does not.

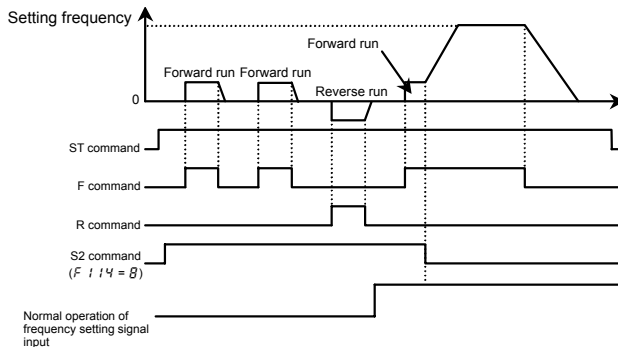
[Parameter settings]

| Terminal symbol | Title   | Function                         | Adjustment range | Setting example           |
|-----------------|---------|----------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| S2              | F I I 4 | Input terminal selection 4A (S2) | 0 ~ 201          | 50<br>(HD operation hold) |

## ■ Usage example 2 ... Jog run

Jog run is used for inching the motor. When a jog run signal is input, a jog run frequency is immediately output, regardless of the acceleration time set.

Assign the jog run function to any input terminal. For example, when assigned to the S2 terminal, set  $F I I 4 = 18$ . Jog run is done while the jog input terminal (S2 terminal) and either F or R are ON.



- The jog frequency is fixed at 5 Hz.
- The stop pattern is slowdown stop.
- The jog run setting terminal is valid when the operation frequency is less than the jog frequency. Jog run does not function when the operation frequency is higher than the jog frequency.
- Even if an operation command is input midway, jog operation is prioritized.
- The jog frequency is not limited by the upper limit frequency (parameter  $UL$ ).

### ■ List of contact input terminal function settings

| Parameter programmed value |                | Function                          | Parameter programmed value |                | Function                                    |
|----------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------|---|
| Positive logic             | Negative logic |                                   | Positive logic             | Negative logic |   |
| 0                          | 1              | No function                       | 36                         | 37             | PID control prohibition                     |
| 2                          | 3              | Forward run command               | 48                         | 49             | Forced local from communication             |
| 4                          | 5              | Reverse run command               | 50                         | 51             | Operation hold (hold of 3-wire operation)   |
| 6                          | 7              | Standby                           | 52                         | 53             | PID integral/differential clear             |
| 8                          | 9              | Reset command                     | 54                         | 55             | PID characteristics switching               |
| 10                         | 11             | Preset-speed command 1            | 88                         | 89             | Frequency UP from external logic input *1   |
| 12                         | 13             | Preset-speed command 2            | 90                         | 91             | Frequency DOWN from external logic input *1 |
| 14                         | 15             | Preset-speed command 3            | 92                         | 93             | Frequency UP/DOWN from external contacts *1 |
| 16                         | 17             | Preset-speed command 4            | 96                         | 97             | Coast stop                                  |
| 18                         | 19             | Jog run mode                      | 106                        | 107            | Frequency setting mode terminal board VI    |
| 20                         | 21             | Emergency stop by external signal | 108                        | 109            | Command mode terminal board                 |
| 22                         | 23             | DC braking command                | 110                        | 111            | Parameter editing permission                |
| 24                         | 25             | 2nd acceleration/deceleration     | 122                        | 123            | Forced deceleration command                 |
| 28                         | 29             | 2nd V/F control mode switching    | 200                        | 201            | Parameter editing prohibition               |
| 32                         | 33             | 2nd stall prevention level        |                            |                |   |

\*1: Active when  $F\bar{R}D$  (frequency setting mode selection) = 5 (UP/DOWN from external logic input) is set. The frequency setup range is from  $\underline{0}$  to  $\underline{UL}$  (upper limit frequency). The acceleration/deceleration time relative to the set frequency is  $R\bar{L}\bar{L}/dE\bar{L}$  while the acceleration/deceleration speed is not switched.

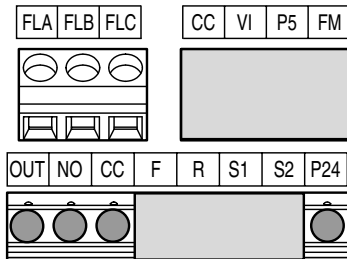
☆ For details about the input terminal function, see 11.6.

## 7.2.2 Output terminal function (sink logic)

This function is used to output a variety of signals to external devices from the inverter.

With the contact output terminal function, you can select from multiple output terminal functions. Set two types of functions for the OUT terminal and then you can output when either one or both of them is ON.

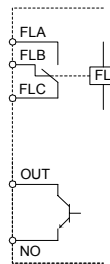
[Control terminal block]



### ■ Usage

FLA, B, C function: Set at parameter **F 132**.

OUT-NO function: Set at parameter **F 130** and **137**.



### ■ Assign one type of function to an output terminal

| Terminal symbol | Title        | Function                     | Adjustment range | Standard defaults              |
|-----------------|--------------|------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------|
| OUT-NO          | <b>F 130</b> | Output terminal selection 1A | 0 ~ 255          | 4 (Low-speed detection signal) |
| FL<br>(A, B, C) | <b>F 132</b> | Output terminal selection 2  |                  | 10 (fault FL)                  |

Note) When assigning 1 type of function to the OUT-NO terminal, set only **F 130**.

Leave parameter **F 137** as the standard setting (**F 137 = 255**).

## ■ Assign two types of functions to the output terminal (OUT-NO)

| Terminal symbol | Title   | Function                                 | Adjustment range                                | Standard defaults              |
|-----------------|---------|--|---|--------------------------------|
| OUT-NO          | $F 130$ | Output terminal selection 1A             | 0 ~ 255   | 4 (Low-speed detection signal) |
|                 | $F 137$ | Output terminal selection 1B             |   | 255 (normally ON)              |
|                 | $F 139$ | Output terminal logic selection (OUT-NO) | 0: $F 130$ and $F 137$<br>1: $F 130$ or $F 137$ | 0                              |

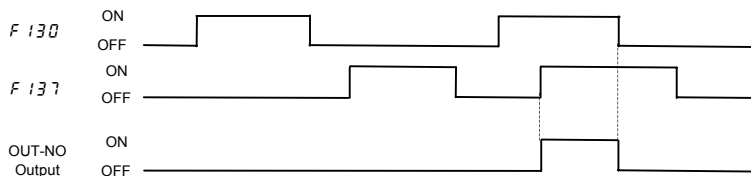
Note 1)  $F 130$  and  $F 137$  are active only when  $F 669 = 0$ : Logic output (default).

Function is inactive when  $F 559 = 1$ : Pulse train output is set.

### (1) Output signals when two types of functions are simultaneously turned ON.

Signals are output when parameter  $F 139$  is the default ( $F 139 = 0$ ), and the functions set at parameters  $F 130$  and  $F 137$  are simultaneously turned ON.

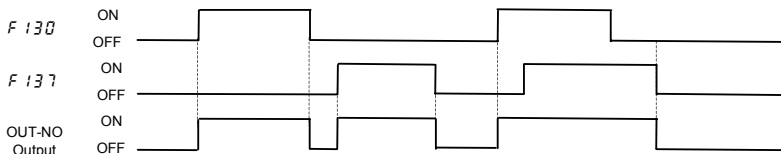
☆ Timing chart



### (2) Output signals when either one of two types of functions are simultaneously turned ON.

Signals are output when parameter  $F 139 = 1$ , and either of the functions set at parameters  $F 130$  and  $F 137$  are turned on.

☆ Timing chart



## ■ List of output terminal function settings

<Explanation of terminology>

- Alarm ..... Alarm output when a setting has been exceeded.
- Pre-alarm ..... Alarm output when the inverter may cause a trip during continued operation.

List of detection levels for output terminal selection

| Parameter programmed value |                | Function   | Parameter programmed value |                | Function                              |
|----------------------------|----------------|--|----------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| Positive logic             | Negative logic |  | Positive logic             | Negative logic |                                       |
| 0                          | 1              | Frequency lower limit  | 26                         | 27             | Small current detection               |
| 2                          | 3              | Frequency upper limit  | 28                         | 29             | Over-torque detection                 |
| 4                          | 5              | Low-speed detection signal   | 40                         | 41             | Run/Stop                              |
| 6                          | 7              | Output frequency attainment signal (acceleration/deceleration completed) | 56                         | 57             | Cumulative operation time alarm       |
| 8                          | 9              | Set frequency attainment signal  | 60                         | 61             | Forward/reverse run                   |
| 10                         | 11             | Fault signal (trip output)   | 78                         | 79             | RS485 communication error             |
| 14                         | 15             | Over-current pre-alarm   | 92                         | 93             | Assigned data output                  |
| 16                         | 17             | Overload pre-alarm   | 128                        | 129            | Parts replacement alarm               |
| 20                         | 21             | Overheat pre-alarm   | 146                        | 147            | Fault signal (output also at a ready) |
| 22                         | 23             | Overvoltage pre-alarm  | 254                        |                | Always OFF                            |
| 24                         | 25             | Power circuit undervoltage detection                                     | 255                        |                | Always ON                             |

- Note 1) ON with positive logic : Open collector output transistor or relay turned ON.  
 OFF : Open collector output transistor or relay turned OFF.  
 ON with negative logic : Open collector output transistor or relay turned OFF.  
 OFF : Open collector output transistor or relay turned ON.

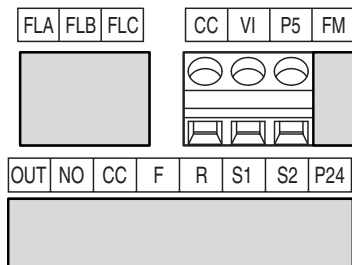
☆ For details about the output terminal functions or levels, see 11.7.

## 7.3 Speed instruction (analog signal) settings from external devices

You can select from voltage input (0 to 10 V, 0 to 5 V), and current input (4 to 20 mA) for an analog input terminal (VI).

The maximum resolution is 1/1000.

[Control terminal block]



### ■ Analog input terminal (VI) function settings

| Title       | Function                                   | Adjustment range   | Standard default setting |
|-------------|--|--|--------------------------|
| <i>F109</i> | Analog/logic input selection (VI terminal) | 0: Voltage signal input (0 - 10 V)<br>1: Current signal input (4 - 20 mA)<br>2: Logic input<br>3: Voltage signal input (0 - 5 V) | 0                        |
| <i>F201</i> | VI input point 1 setting                   | 0 - 100%   | 0                        |
| <i>F202</i> | VI input point 1 frequency                 | 0.0 - 400.0Hz  | 0.0                      |
| <i>F203</i> | VI input point 2 setting                   | 0 - 100%   | 100                      |
| <i>F204</i> | VI input point 2 frequency                 | 0.0 - 400.0Hz  | *                        |
| <i>F209</i> | Analog input filter                        | 4 - 1000 ms  | 64                       |

\* Depends upon the setup menu settings. Select either 50.0 or 60.0. (See 11.5.)

Note) When stable operation cannot be attained because of frequency setting circuit noise, increase *F209*.

### 7.3.1 Settings depending on voltage (0 to 10 V) input

You can set the frequency settings by inputting an analog voltage signal of 0 to 10 V dc between the VI and CC terminals.

The following shows examples when the run command is input from the terminal.

| Title          | Function                                   | Adjustment range   | Standard defaults   | Setting example                  |
|----------------|--|--|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>E n d</i>   | Command mode selection                     | 0 - 2  | 1<br>(panel keypad) | 0<br>(terminal board)            |
| <i>F n d</i>   | Frequency setting mode selection           | 0 - 5  | 2<br>(setting dial) | 0<br>(terminal board VI)         |
| <i>F 1 0 9</i> | Analog/logic input selection (VI terminal) | 0: Voltage signal input (0 - 10 V)<br>1: Current signal input (4 - 20 mA)<br>2: Logic input<br>3: Voltage signal input (0 - 5 V) | 0                   | 0<br>(Voltage signal (0 - 10 V)) |
| <i>F 2 0 1</i> | VI input point 1 setting                   | 0 - 100%   | 0                   | 0                                |
| <i>F 2 0 2</i> | VI input point 1 frequency                 | 0.0 - 400.0Hz  | 0.0                 | 0.0                              |
| <i>F 2 0 3</i> | VI input point 2 setting                   | 0 - 100%   | 100                 | 100                              |
| <i>F 2 0 4</i> | VI input point 2 frequency                 | 0.0 - 400.0Hz  | *                   | 60.0                             |
| <i>F 2 0 9</i> | Analog input filter                        | 4 - 1000 ms  | 64                  | 64                               |

\* Depends upon the setup menu settings. Either 50.0 or 60.0 is selected.

\* Connect a single-phase input model to R/L1 and S/L2/N.

**Run and stop settings**  
You can switch between forward run (F) and reverser run (R), and run/stop with external signals.

**Setting characteristics for the frequency setting signal and operation frequency**  
Set characteristics at two points in the diagram below.

**Connecting and calibrating the frequency meter**  
Select the type of meter connected at *F 6 8 1* and calibrate.  
⇒ For details, see 3.4.

***F 1 0 9* = 0: Voltage signal input (0 to 10 V) (default)**

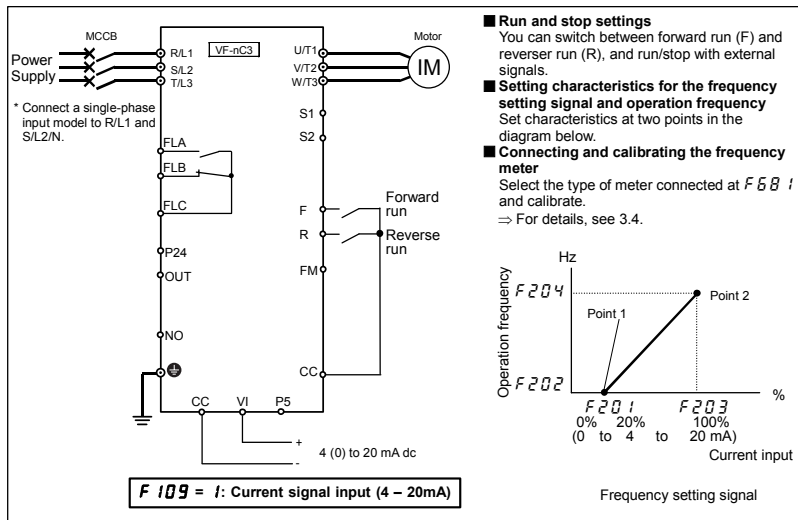
## 7.3.2 Settings depending on current (4 to 20 mA) input

You can set the frequency settings by inputting an analog current signal of 4 (0) to 20 mA dc between the VI and CC terminals.

The following shows examples when the run command is input from the terminal.

| Title       | Function                                   | Adjustment range   | Standard defaults   | Setting example                   |
|-------------|--|--|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>F000</i> | Command mode selection                     | 0 - 2  | 1<br>(panel keypad) | 0<br>(terminal board)             |
| <i>F001</i> | Frequency setting mode selection           | 0 - 5  | 2<br>(setting dial) | 0<br>(terminal board VI)          |
| <i>F109</i> | Analog/logic input selection (VI terminal) | 0: Voltage signal input (0 - 10 V)<br>1: Current signal input (4 - 20 mA)<br>2: Logic input<br>3: Voltage signal input (0 - 5 V) | 0                   | 1<br>(Current signal (4 - 20 mA)) |
| <i>F201</i> | VI input point 1 setting                   | 0 - 100%   | 0                   | 20(0)                             |
| <i>F202</i> | VI input point 1 frequency                 | 0.0 - 400.0Hz  | 0.0                 | 0.0                               |
| <i>F203</i> | VI input point 2 setting                   | 0 - 100%   | 100                 | 100                               |
| <i>F204</i> | VI input point 2 frequency                 | 0.0 - 400.0Hz  | *                   | 60.0                              |
| <i>F209</i> | Analog input filter                        | 4 - 1000 ms  | 64                  | 64                                |

\* Depends upon the setup menu settings. Either 50.0 or 60.0 is selected.





### 7.3.3 Settings depending on voltage (0 to 5 V) input <external potentiometer>

You can set the frequency by connecting the FRH kit (optional), or a potentiometer (1 to 10 kΩ - 1/4 W) to the VI terminal.

Connect the potentiometer between the P5, VI, and CC terminals. The standard voltage for the P5 terminal is 5 V dc. Instead of using the potentiometer, you can set the frequency settings by inputting an analog voltage signal of 0 to 5 V dc between the VI and CC terminals.

The following shows examples when the run command is input from the terminal.

| Title       | Function                                   | Adjustment range   | Standard defaults   | Setting example                 |
|-------------|--|--|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>CMod</i> | Command mode selection                     | 0 - 2  | 1<br>(panel keypad) | 0<br>(terminal board)           |
| <i>FMod</i> | Frequency setting mode selection           | 0 - 5  | 2<br>(setting dial) | 0<br>(terminal board VI)        |
| <i>F109</i> | Analog/logic input selection (VI terminal) | 0: Voltage signal input (0 - 10 V)<br>1: Current signal input (4 - 20 mA)<br>2: Logic input<br>3: Voltage signal input (0 - 5 V) | 0                   | 3<br>(Voltage signal (0 - 5 V)) |
| <i>F201</i> | VI input point 1 setting                   | 0 - 100%   | 0                   | 0                               |
| <i>F202</i> | VI input point 1 frequency                 | 0.0 - 400.0Hz  | 0.0                 | 0.0                             |
| <i>F203</i> | VI input point 2 setting                   | 0 - 100%   | 100                 | 100                             |
| <i>F204</i> | VI input point 2 frequency                 | 0.0 - 400.0Hz  | *                   | 60.0                            |
| <i>F209</i> | Analog input filter                        | 4 - 1000 ms  | 64                  | 64                              |

\*Depends upon the setup menu settings. Either 50.0 or 60.0 is selected.

\* Connect a single-phase input model to R/L1 and S/L2/N.

***F 109 = 3: Voltage signal input (0 - 5V)***

- **Run and stop settings**  
You can switch between forward run (F) and reverse run (R), and run/stop with external signals.
- **Setting characteristics for the frequency setting signal and operation frequency**  
Set characteristics at two points in the diagram below.
- **Connecting and calibrating the frequency meter**  
Select the type of meter connected at *F201* and calibrate.  
⇒ For details, see 3.4.

Operation frequency

Hz

Point 1

Point 2

*F204*

*F202*

*F201*      *F203*

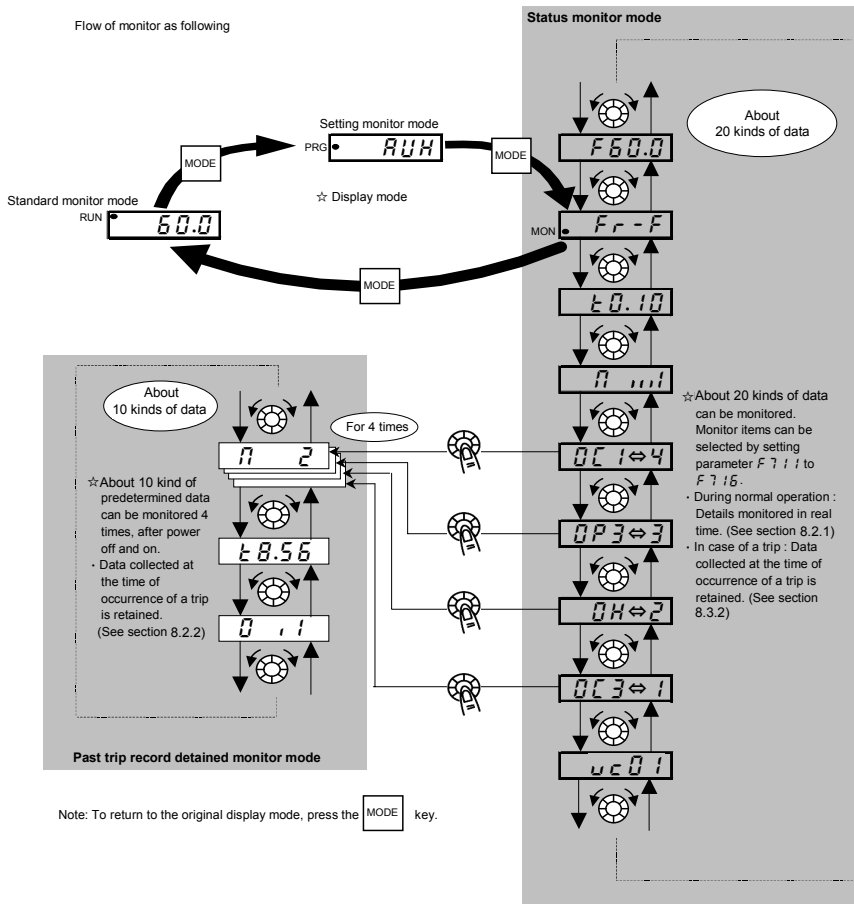
0%      100%

(0 V)      to      (5 V)

Frequency setting signal

# 8. Monitoring the operation status

## 8.1 Flow of status monitor mode




## 8.2 Status monitor mode









### 8.2.1 Status monitor under normal conditions

In this mode, you can monitor the operation status of the inverter.

To display the operation status during normal operation:

Press  key twice.

Setting procedure (eg. operation at 60Hz)

|        | Item displayed                | Panel operated  | LED display | Communication No. | Description  |
|--------|-------------------------------|---|-------------|-------------------|--|
|        | Operation frequency *         |   | 60.0        |                   | The operation frequency is displayed (Operation at 60Hz). (When standard monitor display selection $F 7 10$ is set at 0 [operation frequency]) |
|        | Parameter setting mode        |  | R U H       |                   | The first basic parameter "R U H" (history function) is displayed.   |
|        | Direction of rotation         |  | F r - F     | FE01              | The direction of rotation is displayed.<br>(F r - F: forward run, F r - r: reverse run)  |
| Note 1 | Operation frequency command * |  | F 60.0      | FE02              | The operation frequency command value (Hz/free unit) is displayed.<br>( In case of $F 7 11=2$ )  |
| Note 2 | Load current *                |  | □ 80        | FE03              | The inverter output current (load current) (%A) is displayed.<br>( In case of $F 7 12=1$ )   |
| Note 3 | Input voltage *               |  | 4 100       | FE04              | The inverter input (DC) voltage (%V) is displayed.<br>( In case of $F 7 13=3$ )  |
|        | Output voltage *              |  | P 100       | FE05              | The inverter output voltage (%V) is displayed.<br>( In case of $F 7 14=4$ )  |
|        | Inverter load factor *        |  | L 70        | FE27              | The inverter load factor (%) is displayed.<br>( In case of $F 7 15=2$ )  |
|        | Operation frequency *         |  | 0 60.0      | FD00              | The operation frequency (Hz/free unit) is displayed.<br>( In case of $F 7 16=0$ )  |

(Continued overleaf)

\* Monitor items can be selected by setting parameters  $F 7 10$  to  $F 7 16$ , ( $F 7 20$ ).

For notes, see page H-8.

(Continued)

|        | Item displayed                | Panel operated | LED display | Communication No. | Description   |
|--------|-------------------------------|----------------|-------------|-------------------|---|
| Note 4 | Input terminal                |                | R . . . . . | FE06              | The ON/OFF status of each of the control signal input terminals (F, R, S1, S2, VI) is displayed in bits.<br>ON: .<br>OFF: -<br> |
| Note 5 | Output terminal               |                | O . .       | FE07              | The ON/OFF status of each of the control signal output terminals (RY, OUT and FL) is displayed in bits.<br>ON: .<br>OFF: -<br>  |
|        | Logic input terminals setting |                | L - 5 .     | FD31              | Logic setting by F 1 2 7 is displayed.<br>L - 5 0: Source logic<br>L - 5 1: Sink logic  |
|        | CPU1 version                  |                | v 1 0 1     | FE08              | The version of the CPU1 is displayed.   |
| Note 6 | CPU2 version                  |                | v c 0 1     | FE73              | The version of the CPU2 is displayed.   |
| Note 6 | Past trip 1                   |                | P C 3 ⇔ 1   | FE10              | Past trip 1 (displayed alternately)   |
| Note 6 | Past trip 2                   |                | P H ⇔ 2     | FE11              | Past trip 2 (displayed alternately)   |
|        | Past trip 3                   |                | P P 3 ⇔ 3   | FE12              | Past trip 3 (displayed alternately)   |
| Note 6 | Past trip 4                   |                | P E r r ⇔ 4 | FE13              | Past trip 4 (displayed alternately)   |

(Continued overleaf)

For notes, see page H-8.

(Continued)

|        | Item displayed                      | Panel operated | LED display | Communication No. | Description  |
|--------|-------------------------------------|----------------|-------------|-------------------|--|
| Note 7 | Parts replacement alarm information |                | $n \dots i$ | FE79              | The ON/OFF status of each of the cooling fan, circuit board capacitor, main circuit capacitor of parts replacement alarm or cumulative operation time are displayed in bits.<br><br>ON: $i$<br>OFF: $.$<br><br><br>Cumulative operation time<br>Cooling fan<br>Control circuit board capacitor<br>Main circuit capacitor |
| Note 8 | Cumulative operation time           |                | $t 0.10$    | FE14              | The cumulative operation time is displayed. (0.01=1 hour, 1.00=100 hours)  |
|        | Default display mode                |                | $60.0$      |                   | The operation frequency is displayed (Operation at 60Hz).  |

## 8.2.2 Display of detailed information on a past trip

Details on a past trip (of trips 1 to 4) can be displayed, as shown in the table below, by pressing the center of the setting dial when the trip record is selected in the status monitor mode.



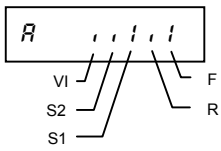

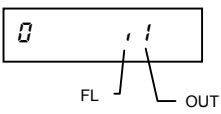


Unlike the "Display of detailed trip information at the occurrence of a trip" in 8.3.2, details on a past trip can be displayed, even after the inverter is turned off or reset.

|        | Item displayed              | Panel operated | LED display             | Description  |
|--------|-----------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|--|
| Note 9 | Past trip 1                 |                | $001 \leftrightarrow 1$ | Past trip 1 (displayed alternately)  |
|        | Continuous trips            |                | $n 2$                   | For OCA, OCL, and Err5, the number of times (maximum of 31) the same trip occurred in succession is displayed (unit: times). Detailed information is recorded at the beginning and ending numbers. |
| Note 1 | Operation frequency         |                | $060.0$                 | The operation frequency when the trip occurred is displayed.   |
|        | Direction of rotation       |                | $F r - F$               | The direction of rotation when the trip occurred is displayed. ( $F r - F$ : Forward run, $F r - r$ : Reverse run)   |
|        | Operation frequency command |                | $F 80.0$                | The operation command value when the trip occurred is displayed.   |
| Note 2 | Load current                |                | $115.0$                 | The inverter output current when the trip occurred is displayed. (%A)  |
| Note 3 | Input voltage               |                | $412.0$                 | The inverter input voltage (DC) when the trip occurred is displayed. (%V).   |

(Continued overleaf)

For notes, see page H-8.

(Continued)

|        | Item displayed            | Panel operated  | LED display | Description   |
|--------|---------------------------|---|-------------|---|
|        | Output voltage            |  | P 100       | The inverter output voltage when the trip occurred is displayed. (%V)   |
| Note 4 | Input terminal            |  | R . . . . . | <p>The ON/OFF statuses of the control input terminals ( F, R, S1, S2, V1 ) are displayed in bits.</p> <p>ON:  <br/>OFF: ,</p>  |
| Note 5 | Output terminal           |  | 0 . .       | <p>The ON/OFF statuses of the control output terminals ( OUT and FL ) are displayed in bits.</p> <p>ON:  <br/>OFF: ,</p>       |
| Note 8 | Cumulative operation time |  | t 8.56      | The cumulative operation time when the trip occurred is displayed.<br>(0.01=1 hour, 1.00=100 hours)   |
|        | Past trip 1               |  | 0C1 ↔       | Press this key to return to past trip 1.  |

\* The monitor value of a trip is not always recorded as the maximum value because of the time required for detection.

For notes, see page H-8.

## 8.3 Display of trip information

### 8.3.1 Trip code display

If the inverter trips, an error code is displayed to suggest the cause. Since trip records are retained, information on each trip can be displayed anytime in the status monitor mode.

For trip code display, see section 13.1









☆ The monitor value of a trip is not always recorded as the maximum value because of the time required for detection.

### 8.3.2 Display of trip information at the occurrence of a trip

At the occurrence of a trip, the same information as that displayed in the mode described in 8.1.1, "Status monitor under normal conditions," can be displayed, as shown in the table below, if the inverter is not turned off or reset.

To display trip information after turning off or resetting the inverter, follow the steps described in 8.1.2, "Display of detailed information on a past trip."

Example of call-up of trip information

| Item displayed                          | Panel operated  | LED display      | Communication No. | Description   |
|---|---|------------------|-------------------|---|
| Cause of trip                           |   | <i>OPZ</i>       |                   | Status monitor mode (The code blinks if a trip occurs.)<br>The motor coasts and comes to a stop (coast stop).                       |
| Parameter setting mode                  |  | <i>RUH</i>       |                   | The first basic parameter " <i>RUH</i> " (history function) is displayed.   |
| Direction of rotation                   |  | <i>F r - F</i>   | FE01              | The direction of rotation at the occurrence of a trip is displayed. ( <i>F r - F</i> : forward run, <i>F r - r</i> : reverser run). |
| Note 1<br>Operation frequency command * |  | <i>F 6 0 . 0</i> | FE02              | The operation frequency command value (Hz/free unit) at the occurrence of a trip is displayed.<br>( In case of <i>F 7 1 1 = 2</i> ) |
| Note 2<br>Load current *                |  | <i>C 1 3 0</i>   | FE03              | The output power of the inverter at the occurrence of a trip (%A) is displayed.<br>( In case of <i>F 7 1 2 = 1</i> )                |
| Note 3<br>Input voltage *               |  | <i>4 1 4 1</i>   | FE04              | The inverter input (DC) voltage (%V) at the occurrence of a trip is displayed.<br>( In case of <i>F 7 1 3 = 3</i> )                 |
| Output voltage *                        |  | <i>P 1 0 0</i>   | FE05              | The output voltage of the inverter at the occurrence of a trip (%V) is displayed.<br>( In case of <i>F 7 1 4 = 4</i> )              |
| Inverter load factor *                  |  | <i>L 7 0</i>     | FE27              | The inverter load factor (%) at the occurrence of a trip is displayed.<br>( In case of <i>F 7 1 5 = 2 7</i> )                       |
| Note 1<br>Operation frequency *         |  | <i>o 6 0 . 0</i> | FE00              | The inverter output frequency (Hz/free unit) at the occurrence of a trip is displayed.<br>( In case of <i>F 7 1 6 = 0</i> )         |

(Continued overleaf)

\* Monitor items can be selected by settings parameters *F 7 1 0* to *F 7 1 6*, (*F 7 2 0*).

For notes, see page H-8.

(Continued)


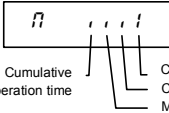



|        | Item displayed                | Panel operated | LED display | Communication No. | Description  |
|--------|-------------------------------|----------------|-------------|-------------------|--|
| Note 4 | Input terminal                |                | R . . . . . | FE06              | The ON/OFF statuses of the control input terminals (F, R, S1, S2, VI) are displayed in bits.<br>ON: .<br>OFF: .<br>                                    |
| Note 5 | Output terminal               |                | 0 . .       | FE07              | The ON/OFF status of each of the control signal output terminals (OUT and FL) at the occurrence of a trip is displayed in bits.<br>ON: .<br>OFF: .<br> |
|        | Logic input terminals setting |                | L - 5 0     | FD31              | Logic setting by F 1 2 7 is displayed.<br>L - 5 0: Source logic<br>L - 5 1: Sink logic   |
|        | CPU1 version                  |                | v 1 0 1     | FE08              | The version of the CPU1 is displayed.  |
|        | CPU2 version                  |                | v c 0 1     | FE73              | The version of the CPU2 is displayed.  |
| Note 6 | Past trip 1                   |                | 0 P 2 ⇔ 1   | FE10              | Past trip 1 (displayed alternately)  |
| Note 6 | Past trip 2                   |                | 0 H ⇔ 2     | FE11              | Past trip 2 (displayed alternately)  |
| Note 6 | Past trip 3                   |                | 0 P 3 ⇔ 3   | FE12              | Past trip 3 (displayed alternately)  |
| Note 6 | Past trip 4                   |                | n E r r ⇔ 4 | FE13              | Past trip 4 (displayed alternately)  |

(Continued overleaf)

For notes, see page H-8.



(Continued)

|        | Item displayed                      | Panel operated  | LED display | Communication No.   | Description   |
|--------|-------------------------------------|---|-------------|---|---|
| Note 7 | Parts replacement alarm information |  | $n \dots i$ | FE79  | <p>The ON/OFF status of each of the cooling fan, circuit board capacitor, main circuit capacitor of parts replacement alarm or cumulative operation time are displayed in bits.</p> <p>ON: <math>i</math><br/>OFF: <math>i</math></p>  |
| Note 8 | Cumulative operation time           |  | $t 0 . 1 0$ | FE14  | The cumulative operation time is displayed. (0.01=1 hour, 1.00=100 hours)   |
|        | Default display mode                |  | $0 P 2$     |  | The cause of the trip is displayed.   |

Note 1: The characters to the left disappear above 100 Hz. (Ex: 120 Hz is  $1 2 0 . 0$ )

Note 2: You can switch between % and A (ampere)/V (volt), using the parameter  $F 7 0 i$  (current/voltage unit selection).

Note 3: The input (DC) voltage displayed is  $1/\sqrt{2}$  times as large as the rectified d.c. input voltage. In case of 1ph-120, displayed value is 1/2 times in addition.

Note 4: If  $F 1 0 9 = 2$  (Logic input): VI bar is activated depend on VI terminal ON/OFF.

If  $F 1 0 9 = 0, 1$  or  $3$  (Voltage/current input): VI bar is always OFF.

Note 5: If  $F 6 5 9 = 0$  (Logic output): Out bar is activated depend on OUT terminal ON/OFF.

If  $F 6 5 9 = 1$  (Pulse train output): OUT bar is always OFF.

Note 6: Past trip records are displayed in the following sequence: 1 (latest trip record)  $\leftrightarrow 2 \leftrightarrow 3 \leftrightarrow 4$  (oldest trip record). If no trip occurred in the past, the message " $n E r r$ " will be displayed. Details on past trip record 1, 2, 3 or 4 can be displayed by pressing the center of the setting dial when past trip 1, 2, 3 or 4 is displayed. For more information, see 8.2.2.

Note 7: Parts replacement alarm is displayed based on the value calculated from the annual average ambient temperature, the ON time of the inverter, the operating time of the motor and the output current (load factor) specified using  $F 5 3 4$ . Use this alarm as a guide only, since it is based on a rough estimation.

Note 8: The cumulative operation time increments only when the machine is in operation.

Note 9: If there is no trip record,  $n E r r$  is displayed.

- ☆ Of the items displayed on the monitor, the reference values of items expressed in percent are listed below.
- Load current: The current monitored is displayed. The unit can be switched to A (amperes).
  - Input voltage: The voltage displayed is the voltage determined by converting the voltage measured in the DC section into an AC voltage. The reference value (100% value) is 200 volts for 240V models, 100 volts for 120V models. The unit can be switched to V (volts).
  - Output voltage: The voltage displayed is the output command voltage. 100% reference value is 200V on both 120V and 240V models. This unit can be switched to V (volts).
  - Torque current: The current required to generate torque is calculated from the load current by vector operations. The value thus calculated is displayed. The reference value (100% value) is the value at the time when the load current is 100%.
  - Load factor of inverter: Depending on the PWM carrier frequency ( $F_{300}$ ) setting and so on, the actual rated current may become smaller than the rated output current indicated on the nameplate. With the actual rated current at that time (after a reduction) as 100%, the proportion of the load current to the rated current is indicated in percent. The load factor is also used to calculate the conditions for overload trip ( $\overline{L} \cdot I$ ).

## 9. Measures to satisfy the standards

### 9.1 How to cope with the CE directive

In Europe, the EMC directive and the low-voltage directive, which took effect in 1996 and 1997, respectively, made it obligatory to put the CE mark on every applicable product to prove that it complies with the directives. Inverters do not work alone but are designed to be installed in a control panel and always used in combination with other machines or systems which control them, so they themselves are not considered to be subject to the EMC directive. However, the CE mark must be put on all inverters because they are subject to the low-voltage directive.

The CE mark must be put on all machines and systems with built-in inverters because such machines and systems are subject to the above directives. It is the responsibility of the manufacturers of such final products to put the CE mark on each one. If they are "final" products, they might also be subject to machine-related directives. It is the responsibility of the manufacturers of such final products to put the CE mark on each one. In order to make machines and systems with built-in inverters compliant with the EMC directive and the low-voltage directive, this section explains how to install inverters and what measures should be taken to satisfy the EMC directive.

We have tested representative models with them installed as described later in this manual to check for conformity with the EMC directive. However, we cannot check all inverters for conformity because whether or not they conform to the EMC directive depends on how they are installed and connected. In other words, the application of the EMC directive varies depending on the composition of the control panel with a built-in inverter(s), the relationship with other built-in electrical components, the wiring condition, the layout condition, and so on. Therefore, please verify yourself whether your machine or system conforms to the EMC directive.

#### 9.1.1 About the EMC directive

The CE mark must be put on every final product that includes an inverter(s) and a motor(s). In the VF-nC3 series of inverters, the single-phase 200 V class is equipped with an EMI filter and complies with the EMC directive if wiring is carried out correctly.

- EMC directive  
2004/108/EC

The EMC standards are broadly divided into two categories; immunity- and emission-related standards, each of which is further categorized according to the operating environment of each individual machine. Since inverters are intended for use with industrial systems under industrial environments, they fall within the EMC categories listed in Table 1 below. The tests required for machines and systems as final products are almost the same as those required for inverters.

Table 1 EMC standards

| Category | Subcategory  | Product standards | Test standard    |
|----------|--|-------------------|------------------|
| Emission | Radiation noise                                      | IEC 61800-3       | CISPR11(EN55011) |
|          | Transmission noise                                   |                   | CISPR11(EN55011) |
|          | Static discharge                                     |                   | IEC61000-4-2     |
| Immunity | Radioactive radio-frequency magnetic contactor field |                   | IEC61000-4-3     |
|          | First transient burst                                |                   | IEC61000-4-4     |
|          | Lightning surge                                      |                   | IEC61000-4-5     |
|          | Radio-frequency induction/transmission interference  |                   | IEC61000-4-6     |
|          | Voltage dip/Interruption of power                    |                   | IEC61000-4-11    |

## 9.1.2 Measures to satisfy the EMC directive

This subsection explains what measures must be taken to satisfy the EMC directive.

- (1) The single-phase 240 V class is equipped with an EMI filter.

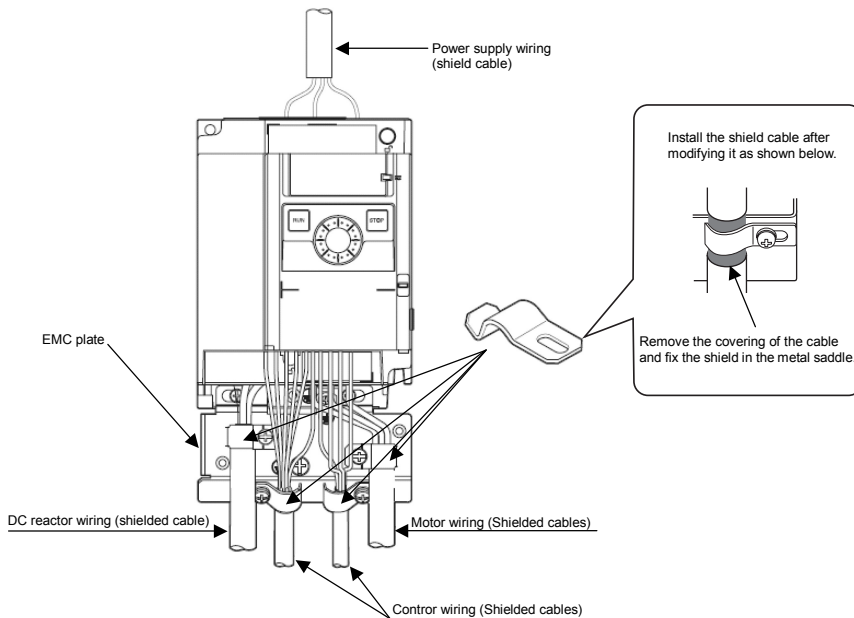
Table 2 Inverters and EMI filters

Single-phase 240 V class

| Inverter and filter combinations |  |   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| Inverter type                    | Transmission noise IEC61800-3, category C1 applicable filters (motor wiring length of less than 5 m) | Transmission noise IEC61800-3, category C2 applicable filters (motor wiring length of less than 10 m) |
| VFNC3S-2001PL                    | Built-in filter  | Built-in filter   |
| VFNC3S-2002PL                    |  |   |
| VFNC3S-2004PL                    |  |   |
| VFNC3S-2007PL                    |  |   |
| VFNC3S-2015PL                    |  |   |
| VFNC3S-2022PL                    |  |   |

- (2) Use shielded power cables, such as inverter output cables, and shielded control cables. Route the cables and wires so as to minimize their lengths. Keep a distance between the power cable and the control cable and between the input and output wires of the power cable. Do not route them in parallel or bind them together, instead cross at right angle.
- (3) It is more effective in limiting the radiation noise to install the inverter in a sealed steel cabinet. Using wires as thick and short as possible, earth the metal plate and the control panel securely with a distance kept between the earth cable and the power cable.
- (4) Route the input and output wires apart from each other.
- (5) To suppress radiation noise from cables, ground all shielded cables through a noise cut plate. It is effective to earth shielded cables in the vicinity of the inverter and cabinet (within a radius of 10cm from each of them). Inserting a ferrite core in a shielded cable is even more effective in limiting the radiation noise.
- (6) To further limit the radiation noise, insert a zero-phase reactor in the inverter output line and insert ferrite cores in the earth cables of the metal plate and cabinet.
- (7) Consult us about the three-phase 240 V and single-phase 120 V classes.

[Example of wiring]



### 9.1.3 About the low-voltage directive

The low-voltage directive provides for the safety of machines and systems. All Toshiba inverters are CE-marked in accordance with the standard EN 50178 specified by the low-voltage directive, and can therefore be installed in machines or systems and imported without problem to European countries.

Applicable standard: IEC61800-5-1

Pollution level: 2

Overvoltage category: 3

## 9.1.4 Measures to satisfy the low-voltage directive

When incorporating the inverter into a machine or system, it is necessary to take the following measures so that the inverter satisfies the low-voltage directive.

- (1) Install the inverter in a cabinet and ground the inverter enclosure. When doing maintenance, be extremely careful not to put your fingers into the inverter through a wiring hole and touch a charged part, which may occur depending on the model and capacity of the inverter used.
- (2) Connect earth wiring to the earth terminal on the EMC plate. Or install the EMC plate (attached as standard) and another cable connect to earth terminal on the EMC plate. Refer to the table 10.1 for earth cable sizes.
- (3) Install a non-fuse circuit breaker or a fuse on the input side of the inverter. (See chapter 10.)

## 9.2 Compliance with UL Standard and CSA Standard

The VF-nC3 models, that conform to the UL Standard and CSA Standard have the UL/CSA mark on the nameplate.

### 9.2.1 Compliance with Installation

A UL certificate was granted on the assumption that the inverter would be installed in a cabinet. Therefore, install the inverter in a cabinet and if necessary, take measures to maintain the ambient temperature (temperature in the cabinet) within the specified temperature range. (See section 1.4.4)

### 9.2.2 Compliance with Connection

Use the UL conformed cables (Rating 75 °C or more, Use the copper conductors only.) to the main circuit terminals (3-phase models: R/L1, S/L2, T/L3, single-phase models: R/L1, S/L2/N).

For instruction in the United States, Integral solid state short circuit protection does not provide branch circuit protection. Branch circuit protection must be provided in accordance with the National Electrical Code and any additional local codes.

For instruction in the Canada, Integral solid state short circuit protection does not provide branch circuit protection. Branch circuit protection must be provided in accordance with the Canadian Electrical Code and any additional local codes.

### 9.2.3 Compliance with Peripheral devices

Use the UL listed fuses at connecting to power supply.

Short circuit test is performed under the condition of the power supply short-circuit currents in below.

These interrupting capacities and fuse rating currents depend on the applicable motor capacities.

■ **AIC, Fuse and Wire sizes**

| Voltage class           | Capacity of applicable motor (kW) | Inverter model | AIC (A) (Interrupting capacity) | Fuse class and current (A) | Wire sizes of power circuit | Ground wire size AWG |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| Single-phase 100V class | 0.1                               | VFNC3S-1001P   | AIC 1000A                       | CC 8A max.                 | AWG 14                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 0.2                               | VFNC3S-1002P   | AIC 1000A                       | J 15A max.                 | AWG 14                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 0.4                               | VFNC3S-1004P   | AIC 1000A                       | J 25A max.                 | AWG 14                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 0.75                              | VFNC3S-1007P   | AIC 1000A                       | J 40A max.                 | AWG 10                      | AWG 12               |
| Single-phase 200V class | 0.1                               | VFNC3S-2001PL  | AIC 1000A                       | CC 5A max.                 | AWG 14                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 0.2                               | VFNC3S-2002PL  | AIC 1000A                       | CC 7A max.                 | AWG 14                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 0.4                               | VFNC3S-2004PL  | AIC 1000A                       | J 15A max.                 | AWG 14                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 0.75                              | VFNC3S-2007PL  | AIC 1000A                       | J 25A max.                 | AWG 14                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 1.5                               | VFNC3S-2015PL  | AIC 1000A                       | J 40A max.                 | AWG 10                      | AWG 12               |
|                         | 2.2                               | VFNC3S-2022PL  | AIC 1000A                       | J 45A max.                 | AWG 10                      | AWG 10               |
| Three-phase 200V class  | 0.1                               | VFNC3-2001P    | AIC 5000A                       | CC 3A max.                 | AWG 14                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 0.2                               | VFNC3-2002P    | AIC 5000A                       | CC 5A max.                 | AWG 14                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 0.4                               | VFNC3-2004P    | AIC 5000A                       | CC 7A max.                 | AWG 14                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 0.75                              | VFNC3-2007P    | AIC 5000A                       | J 15A max.                 | AWG 14                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 1.5                               | VFNC3-2015P    | AIC 5000A                       | J 25A max.                 | AWG 14                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 2.2                               | VFNC3-2022P    | AIC 5000A                       | J 25A max.                 | AWG 12                      | AWG 14               |
|                         | 3.7                               | VFNC3-2037P    | AIC 5000A                       | J 45A max.                 | AWG 10                      | AWG 10               |





| Input voltage | Drive motor  | Power supply short-circuit and maximum input voltage  |
|---------------|--------------|---|
| 100V(1phase)  | Up to 0.75kW | Suitable For Use On A Circuit Capable Of Delivering Not More Than 1,000A rms Symmetrical Amperes, 120 Volts Maximum When Protected by CC/J Class Fuses. |
| 200V(1phase)  | Up to 2.2kW  | Suitable For Use On A Circuit Capable Of Delivering Not More Than 1,000A rms Symmetrical Amperes, 240 Volts Maximum When Protected by CC/J Class Fuses. |
| 200V(3phase)  | Up to 2.2kW  | Suitable For Use On A Circuit Capable Of Delivering Not More Than 5,000A rms Symmetrical Amperes, 240 Volts Maximum When Protected by CC/J Class Fuses. |
|               | 3.7kW        | Suitable For Use On A Circuit Capable Of Delivering Not More Than 5,000A rms Symmetrical Amperes, 240 Volts Maximum When Protected by J Class Fuses.    |

## 9.2.4 Motor thermal protection

Selects the electronic thermal protection characteristics that fit with the ratings and characteristics of the motor. (See 3.5.)

In case of multi motor operation with one inverter, thermal relay should be connected to each motor.

## 10. Peripheral devices

|  Warning        |   |
|--|---|
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When supplying power from a wall socket, do not exceed the rated capacity of the socket. Otherwise, this may generate excessive heat which can start a fire.</li> </ul>              |
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using switchgear for the inverter, it must be installed in a cabinet. Failure to do so can lead to risk of electric shock and can result in death or serious injury.</li> </ul> |
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connect earth cables securely. Failure to do so can lead to risk of electric shock or fire in case of a failure or short-circuit or electric leak.</li> </ul>                        |

### 10.1 Selection of wiring materials and devices

| Voltage class           | Capacity of applicable motor (kW) | Inverter model | Wire size (See Note 4)                     |                            |  |                            |                                |                            |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|--|----------------------------|--|----------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
|                         |                                   |                | Power circuit (mm <sup>2</sup> ) (Note 1.) |                            | DC reactor (optional) (mm <sup>2</sup> ) |                            | Earth cable (mm <sup>2</sup> ) |                            |
|                         |                                   |                | IEC compliant                              | For Japan (JEAC800 1-2005) | IEC compliant                            | For Japan (JEAC800 1-2005) | IEC compliant                  | For Japan (JEAC800 1-2005) |
| Single-phase 100V class | 0.1                               | VFNC3S-1001P   | 1.5  | 2.0                        | -  | -                          | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 0.2                               | VFNC3S-1002P   | 1.5  | 2.0                        | -  | -                          | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 0.4                               | VFNC3S-1004P   | 2.5  | 2.0                        | -  | -                          | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 0.75                              | VFNC3S-1007P   | 4.0  | 2.0                        | -  | -                          | 4.0                            | 3.5                        |
| Single-phase 200V class | 0.1                               | VFNC3S-2001PL  | 1.5(1.5)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 1.5                                      | 2.0                        | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 0.2                               | VFNC3S-2002PL  | 1.5(1.5)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 1.5                                      | 2.0                        | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 0.4                               | VFNC3S-2004PL  | 1.5(1.5)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 1.5                                      | 2.0                        | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 0.75                              | VFNC3S-2007PL  | 1.5(1.5)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 1.5                                      | 2.0                        | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 1.5                               | VFNC3S-2015PL  | 2.5(2.5)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 1.5                                      | 2.0                        | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 2.2                               | VFNC3S-2022PL  | 4.0(4.0)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 1.5                                      | 2.0                        | 4.0                            | 3.5                        |
| Three-phase 200V class  | 0.1                               | VFNC3-2001P    | 1.5(1.5)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 1.5                                      | 2.0                        | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 0.2                               | VFNC3-2002P    | 1.5(1.5)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 1.5                                      | 2.0                        | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 0.4                               | VFNC3-2004P    | 1.5(1.5)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 1.5                                      | 2.0                        | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 0.75                              | VFNC3-2007P    | 1.5(1.5)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 1.5                                      | 2.0                        | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 1.5                               | VFNC3-2015P    | 1.5(1.5)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 1.5                                      | 2.0                        | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 2.2                               | VFNC3-2022P    | 2.5(1.5)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 1.5                                      | 2.0                        | 2.5                            | 2.0                        |
|                         | 4.0                               | VFNC3-2037P    | 4.0(2.5)                                   | 2.0(2.0)                   | 4.0                                      | 2.0                        | 4.0                            | 3.5                        |

Note 1: Sizes of the wires connected to the input terminals R/L1, S/L2 and T/L3 and the output terminals U/T1, V/T2 and W/T3 when the length of each wire does not exceed 30m.

The numeric values in parentheses refer to the sizes of wires to be used when a DC reactor is connected.

Note 2: For the control circuit, use shielded wires 0.75 mm<sup>2</sup> or more in diameter.

Note 3: For grounding, use a cable with a size equal to or larger than the above.

Note 4: The wire sizes specified in the above table apply to HIV wires (copper wires shielded with an insulator with a maximum allowable temperature of 75°C) used at an ambient temperature of 50°C or less.

Note 5: If there is a need to bring the inverter into UL compliance, use wires specified in Chapter 9.



**■ Selection of wiring devices**

| Voltage class           | Applicable motor (kW)r | Input current (A) |          | No-fuse breaker (MCCB)<br>Earth leakage breaker (ELCB) |                       |                   |                       | Magnetic contactor (MC) |       |                   |       | Overload relay (THR)                   |       |      |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|----------|--|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------|-------------------|-------|--|-------|------|
|                         |                        | No reactor        | With DCL | No reactor   |                       | with DCL          |                       | No reactor              |       | with DCL          |       | Adjustment current (A) reference value | Model |      |
|                         |                        |                   |          | Rated current (A)                                      | MCCB type (ELCB type) | Rated current (A) | MCCB type (ELCB type) | Rated current (A)       | Model | Rated current (A) | Model |  |       |      |
| Single-phase 100V class | 0.1                    | 3.5               | -        | 5  | NJ30E (NVJ30E)        | -                 | -                     | 13                      | CA13  | -                 | -     | 0.7                                    | TH13U |      |
|                         | 0.2                    | 6.0               | -        | 10   |                       | 13                |                       | -                       |       | 1.3               |       |  |       |      |
|                         | 0.4                    | 11.4              | -        | 15   |                       | 13                |                       | -                       |       | 2.3               |       |  |       |      |
|                         | 0.75                   | 18.9              | -        | 30   |                       | 19                |                       | CA20                    |       | -                 |       | 3.6                                    |       |      |
| Single-phase 200V class | 0.1                    | 2.0               | 1.2      | 5  | NJ30E (NVJ30E)        | 5                 | NJ30E (NVJ30E)        | 13                      | CA13  | 13                | CA13  | 0.7                                    | TH13U |      |
|                         | 0.2                    | 3.4               | 2.1      | 5  |                       | 5                 |                       | 13                      |       | 13                |       | 1.3                                    |       |      |
|                         | 0.4                    | 5.9               | 4.1      | 10   |                       | 5                 |                       | 13                      |       | 13                |       | 2.3                                    |       |      |
|                         | 0.75                   | 10.2              | 7.7      | 15   |                       | 10                |                       | 13                      |       | 13                |       | 3.6                                    |       |      |
|                         | 1.5                    | 17.8              | 14.8     | 20   |                       | 15                |                       | 19                      |       | CA20              |       | 13                                     |       | 6.8  |
|                         | 2.2                    | 24                | 20.3     | 30   |                       | 30                |                       | 26                      |       | CA25              |       | 19                                     |       | CA20 |
| Three-phase 200V class  | 0.1                    | 1.2               | 0.6      | 5  | NJ30E (NVJ30E)        | 5                 | NJ30E (NVJ30E)        | 13                      | CA13  | 13                | CA13  | 0.7                                    | TH13U |      |
|                         | 0.2                    | 2                 | 0.9      | 5  |                       | 5                 |                       | 13                      |       | 13                |       | 1.3                                    |       |      |
|                         | 0.4                    | 3.6               | 1.8      | 5  |                       | 5                 |                       | 13                      |       | 13                |       | 2.3                                    |       |      |
|                         | 0.75                   | 6.3               | 3.5      | 10   |                       | 10                |                       | 13                      |       | 13                |       | 3.6                                    |       |      |
|                         | 1.5                    | 11.1              | 6.6      | 15   |                       | 15                |                       | 13                      |       | 13                |       | 6.8                                    |       |      |
|                         | 2.2                    | 14.9              | 9.3      | 20   |                       | 20                |                       | 13                      |       | 13                |       | 9.3                                    |       |      |
|                         | 4.0                    | 23.8              | 16.1     | 30   |                       | 30                |                       | 26                      |       | CA25              |       | 19                                     |       | CA20 |

Note 1: Models made by Toshiba Industrial Products Sales Corporation are shown.

Note 2: Be sure to attach a surge killer to the exciting coil of the relay and the magnetic contactor.

Note 3: When using the auxiliary contacts 2a of the magnetic contactor MC for the control circuit, connect the contacts 2a in parallel to increase reliability.

Note 4: Select an MCCB with a current breaking rating appropriate to the capacity of the power supply, because short-circuit currents vary greatly depending on the capacity of the power supply and the condition of the wiring system. The MCCB, MC, THR and ELCB in this table were selected, on the assumption that a power supply with a normal capacity would be used.

## 10.2 Installation of a magnetic contactor

If using the inverter without installing a magnetic contactor (MC) in the primary circuit, use an MCCB (with a power cutoff device) to open the primary circuit when the inverter protective circuit is activated.

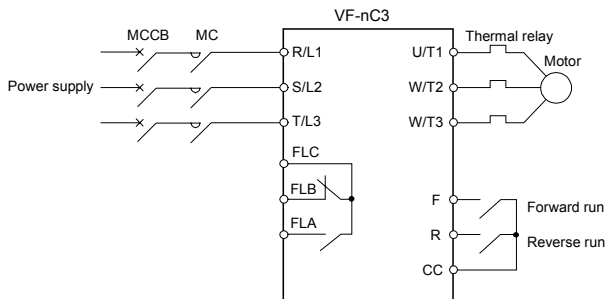
When using an optional brake module, install a magnetic contactor (MC) or non-fuse circuit breaker with a power cutoff device on the primary power supply of the inverter, so that the power circuit opens when the failure detection relay (FL) in the inverter or the externally installed overload relay is actuated.

### ■ Magnetic contactor in the primary circuit

To detach the inverter from the power supply in any of the following cases, insert a magnetic contactor (primary-side magnetic contactor) between the inverter and the power supply.

- (1) If the motor overload relay is tripped
- (2) If the protective detector (FL) built into the inverter is activated
- (3) In the event of a power failure (for prevention of auto-restart)
- (4) If the resistor protective relay is tripped when a braking resistor and braking module (option) are used

When using the inverter with no magnetic contactor (MC) on the primary side, install a non-fuse circuit breaker with a voltage tripping coil instead of an MC and adjust the circuit breaker so that it will be tripped if the protective relay referred to above is activated. To detect a power failure, use an undervoltage relay or the like.



Example of connection of a magnetic contactor in the primary circuit

### Notes on wiring

- When frequently switching between start and stop, do not use the magnetic contactor on the primary side as an on-off switch for the inverter.  
Instead, stop and start the inverter by using terminals F and CC (forward run) or R and CC (reverse run).
- Be sure to attach a surge killer to the exciting coil of the magnetic contactor (MC).

## ■ Magnetic contactor in the secondary circuit

A magnetic contactor may be installed on the secondary side to switch controlled motors or supply commercial power to the load when the inverter is out of operation.

### Notes on wiring

- Be sure to interlock the magnetic contactor on the secondary side with the power supply to prevent commercial power from being applied to the inverter output terminals.
- When installing a magnetic contactor (MC) between the inverter and the motor, avoid turning the magnetic contactor on or off during operation. Turning the magnetic contactor on or off during operation causes a current to rush into the inverter which could lead to malfunction.

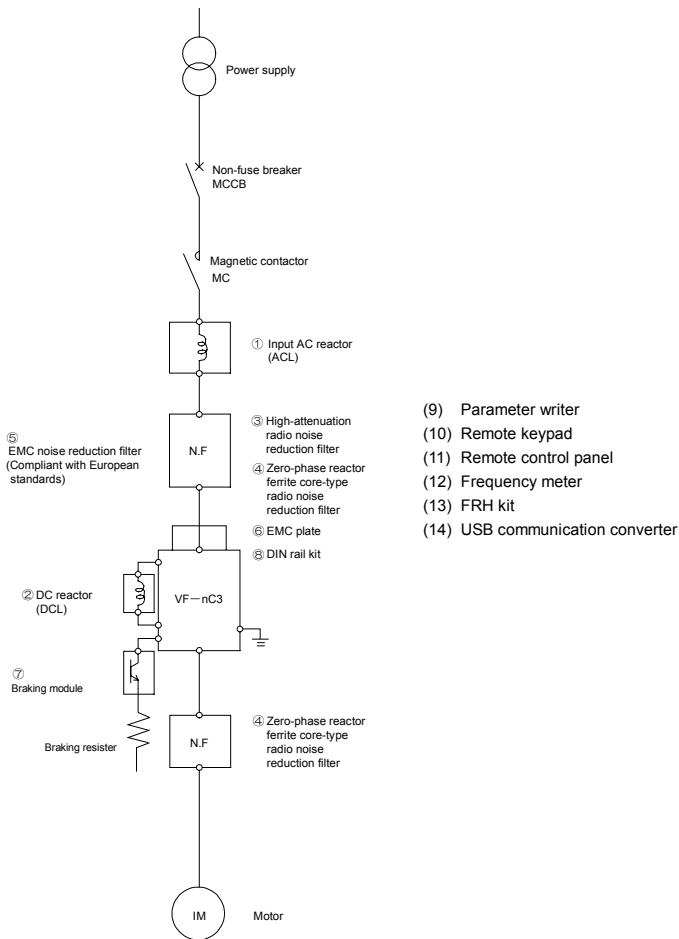
## 10.3 Installation of an overload relay

---

- 1) The VF-nC3 inverter has an electronic-thermal overload protective function.  
In the following cases, however, an overload relay suitable for the adjustment of the motor electronic thermal protection level ( $I_{tr}$ ) and appropriate to the motor used should be installed between the inverter and the motor.
  - When using a motor with a current rating different to that of the corresponding Toshiba general-purpose motor
  - When operating a single motor with an output smaller than that of the applicable standard motor or more than one motor simultaneously.
- 2) When using the VF-nC3 inverter to operate a constant-torque motor, such as the Toshiba VF motor, adjust the protection characteristic of the electronic thermal protection unit ( $I_{tr}$ ) to the VF motor use.
- 3) It is recommended to use a motor with a thermal relay embedded in the motor coil to give sufficient protection to the motor, especially when it runs in a low-speed range.

## 10.4 Optional external devices

The following external devices are optionally available for the VF-nC3 series of inverters.



# 11. Table of parameters and data

## 11.1 User parameters

| Title      | Function                               | Unit | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communication | Adjustment range | Default setting | User setting | Reference |
|------------|--|------|--|------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------|
| <i>F C</i> | Operation frequency of operation panel | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                 | L L -U L         | 0.0             |              | 3.2.2     |

## 11.2 Basic parameters

### • Four navigation functions

| Title        | Communication No. | Function                             | Unit | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communication | Adjustment range   | Default setting | User setting | Reference  |
|--------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|------|--|--|-----------------|--------------|------------|
| <i>R U H</i> | -                 | History function                     | -    | -  | Displays parameters in groups of five in the reverse order to that in which their settings were changed.<br>* (Possible to edit)                                   | -               |              | 4.3<br>5.1 |
| <i>R U F</i> | 0093              | Guidance function                    | -    | -  | 0: -<br>1: -<br>2: Preset speed guidance<br>3: Analog signal operation guidance<br>4: Motor 1/2 switching operation guidance<br>5: Motor constant setting guidance | 0               |              | 4.3<br>5.2 |
| <i>R U I</i> | 0000              | Automatic acceleration/ deceleration | -    | -  | 0: Disabled (manual setting)<br>1: Automatic<br>2: Automatic (only at acceleration)  | 0               |              | 5.3        |
| <i>R U P</i> | 0001              | Torque boost setting macro function  | -    | -  | 0: Disabled<br>1: Automatic torque boost + auto-tuning<br>2: Vector control + auto-tuning<br>3: Energy saving + auto-tuning  | 0               |              | 5.4        |

### • Basic parameters

| Title        | Communication No. | Function                         | Unit | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communication | Adjustment range   | Default setting | User setting | Reference                |
|--------------|-------------------|----------------------------------|------|--|--|-----------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| <i>C A D</i> | 0003              | Command mode selection           | -    | -  | 0: Terminal board<br>1: Panel keypad (including remote keypad)<br>2: RS485 communication   | 1               |              | 3<br>5.5<br>7.3          |
| <i>F A D</i> | 0004              | Frequency setting mode selection | -    | -  | 0: Terminal board VI<br>1: Setting dial 1 (press in center to save)<br>2: Setting dial 2 (save even if power is off)<br>3: RS485 communication<br>4: -<br>5: UP/DOWN from external logic input | 2               |              | 3<br>5.5<br>6.5.1<br>7.3 |

| Title  | Communication No. | Function                                     | Unit  | Minimum setting unit<br>Panel/Communication | Adjustment range   | Default setting | User setting | Reference      |
|--|-------------------|--|-------|---|--|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>F<math>\bar{N}</math>SL</i>                   | 0005              | Meter selection                              | -     | -   | 0: Output frequency<br>1: Output current<br>2: Frequency reference<br>3: Input voltage (DC detection)<br>4: Output voltage (command value)<br>5 to 11: -<br>12: Frequency setting value (after compensation)<br>13: V1 input value<br>14: -<br>15: Fixed output 1 (output current 100% equivalent)<br>16: Fixed output 2 (output current 50% equivalent)<br>17: Fixed output 3 (Other than the output current)<br>18: RS-485 communications data<br>19: For adjustments ( <i>F<math>\bar{N}</math></i> set value is displayed.)<br>20 to 22: - | 0               |              | 3.4            |
| <i>F<math>\bar{N}</math></i>                     | 0006              | Meter adjustment gain                        | -     | -   | -  | -               |              |                |
| <i>F<math>\bar{r}</math></i>                     | 0008              | Forward/reverse run selection (Panel keypad) | -     | -   | 0: Forward run<br>1: Reverse run<br>2: Forward run (F/R switching on remote keypad)<br>3: Reverse run (F/R switching on remote keypad)   | 0               |              | 5.7            |
| <i>R<math>\bar{L}</math><math>\bar{L}</math></i> | 0009              | Acceleration time 1                          | S     | 0.1/0.1                                     | 0.0-3000   | 10.0            |              | 5.3            |
| <i>d<math>\bar{E}</math><math>\bar{L}</math></i> | 0010              | Deceleration time 1                          | S     | 0.1/0.1                                     | 0.0-3000   | 10.0            |              |                |
| <i>F<math>\bar{H}</math></i>                     | 0011              | Maximum frequency                            | Hz    | 0.1/0.01                                    | 30.0-400.0   | *1              |              | 5.8            |
| <i>U<math>\bar{L}</math></i>                     | 0012              | Upper limit frequency                        | Hz    | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.5- <i>F<math>\bar{H}</math></i>  | *1              |              | 5.9            |
| <i>L<math>\bar{L}</math></i>                     | 0013              | Lower limit frequency                        | Hz    | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0- <i>U<math>\bar{L}</math></i>  | 0.0             |              |                |
| <i>v<math>\bar{L}</math></i>                     | 0014              | Base frequency 1                             | Hz    | 0.1/0.01                                    | 20.0-400.0   | *1              |              | 5.10           |
| <i>v<math>\bar{L}</math>v</i>                    | 0409              | Base frequency voltage 1                     | V     | 1/0.1                                       | 50-330   | *1              |              | 5.10<br>6.12.5 |
| <i>P<math>\bar{L}</math></i>                     | 0015              | V/F control mode selection                   | -     | -   | 0: V/F constant<br>1: Variable torque<br>2: Automatic torque boost control<br>3: Vector control<br>4: Energy-saving  | 0               |              | 5.11           |
| <i>v<math>\bar{b}</math></i>                     | 0016              | Torque boost value 1                         | %     | 0.1/0.1                                     | 0.0-30.0   | *2              |              | 5.12           |
| <i>t<math>\bar{H}</math><math>\bar{r}</math></i> | 0600              | Motor electronic-thermal protection level 1  | % (A) | 1/1   | 10-100   | 100             |              | 3.5<br>6.16.1  |

\*1: Depends upon the setup menu settings. See 11.5.

\*2: Parameter values vary depending on the capacity. See 11.4.

| Title   | Communication No. | Function   | Unit | Minimum setting unit<br>Panel/Communication | Adjustment range   | Default setting     | User setting | Reference    |       |       |
|---------|-------------------|--|------|---|--|---------------------|--------------|--------------|-------|-------|
| 0 L 0   | 0017              | Electronic-thermal protection characteristic selection | -    | -   | Setting  | Overload protection | OL stall     | 0            | 3.5   |       |
|         |                   |  |      |   | 0  | valid               | invalid      |              |       |       |
|         |                   |  |      |   | 1  | Standard motor      | valid        |              |       | valid |
|         |                   |  |      |   | 2  | invalid             | invalid      |              |       |       |
|         |                   |  |      |   | 3  | invalid             | valid        |              |       |       |
|         |                   |  |      |   | 4  | valid               | invalid      |              |       |       |
|         |                   |  |      |   | 5  | VF motor            | valid        |              |       | valid |
|         |                   |  |      |   | 6  | invalid             | invalid      |              |       |       |
| 7       | invalid           | valid  |      |   |  |                     |              |              |       |       |
| 5 r 1   | 0018              | Preset-speed frequency 1                               | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | L L -U L   | 0.0                 | -            | 3.6          |       |       |
| 5 r 2   | 0019              | Preset-speed frequency 2                               | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | L L -U L   | 0.0                 | -            |              |       |       |
| 5 r 3   | 0020              | Preset-speed frequency 3                               | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | L L -U L   | 0.0                 | -            |              |       |       |
| 5 r 4   | 0021              | Preset-speed frequency 4                               | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | L L -U L   | 0.0                 | -            |              |       |       |
| 5 r 5   | 0022              | Preset-speed frequency 5                               | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | L L -U L   | 0.0                 | -            |              |       |       |
| 5 r 6   | 0023              | Preset-speed frequency 6                               | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | L L -U L   | 0.0                 | -            |              |       |       |
| 5 r 7   | 0024              | Preset-speed frequency 7                               | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | L L -U L   | 0.0                 | -            |              |       |       |
| ε Y P   | 0007              | Default setting  | -    | -   | 0: -<br>1: 50Hz default setting<br>2: 60Hz default setting<br>3: Default setting 1 (Initialization)<br>4: Trip record clear<br>5: Cumulative operation time clear<br>6: Initialization of type information<br>7: Save user setting parameters<br>8: Load user setting parameters<br>9: Cumulative fan operation time record clears<br>10 to 12: -<br>13: Default setting 2 (Complete initialization) | 0                   | -            | 4.3<br>4.3.2 |       |       |
| 5 E ε   | 0099              | Checking the region setting                            | -    | -   | 0: Start setup menu<br>1: Japan (read only)<br>2: North America (read only)<br>3: Asia (read only)<br>4: Europe (read only)  | * 1                 | -            | 4.4          |       |       |
| P S E L | 0050              | Registered parameters display selection                | -    | -   | 0: Standard setting mode at power on<br>1: Easy setting mode at power on<br>2: Easy setting mode only  | 0                   | -            | 4.5          |       |       |
| F 1 - - | -                 | Extended parameter starting at 100                     | -    | -   | -  | -                   | -            | 4.2.2        |       |       |
| F 2 - - | -                 | Extended parameter starting at 200                     | -    | -   | -  | -                   | -            |              |       |       |
| F 3 - - | -                 | Extended parameter starting at 300                     | -    | -   | -  | -                   | -            |              |       |       |
| F 4 - - | -                 | Extended parameter starting at 400                     | -    | -   | -  | -                   | -            |              |       |       |
| F 5 - - | -                 | Extended parameter starting at 500                     | -    | -   | -  | -                   | -            |              |       |       |
| F 6 - - | -                 | Extended parameter starting at 600                     | -    | -   | -  | -                   | -            |              |       |       |
| F 7 - - | -                 | Extended parameter starting at 700                     | -    | -   | -  | -                   | -            |              |       |       |
| F 8 - - | -                 | Extended parameter starting at 800                     | -    | -   | -  | -                   | -            |              |       |       |
| G r . U | -                 | Automatic edit function                                | -    | -   | -  | -                   | -            |              | 4.3.1 |       |

\*1: Depends upon the setup menu settings. See 11.5. The region is set to 1 to 4 when parameter 5 E ε is read.  
To re-select a region, set "0" to start up the setup menu.

## 11.3 Extended parameters

### • Input/output parameters 1

| Title | Communication No. | Function                                   | Unit | Minimum setting unit<br>Panel/Communication | Adjustment range  | Default setting | User setting | Reference                               |
|-------|-------------------|--|------|---|---|-----------------|--------------|---|
| F 100 | 0100              | Low-speed signal output frequency          | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0- <i>F H</i>   | 0.0             |              | 6.1.1                                   |
| F 101 | 0101              | Speed reach setting frequency              | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0- <i>F H</i>   | 0.0             |              | 6.1.3                                   |
| F 102 | 0102              | Speed reach detection band                 | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0- <i>F H</i>   | 2.5             |              | 6.1.2<br>6.1.3                          |
| F 105 | 0105              | Priority selection (Both F and R are ON)   | -    | -   | 0: Reverse<br>1: Slowdown Stop  | 1               |              | 6.2.1                                   |
| F 108 | 0108              | Always active function selection 1         | -    | -   | 0-123   | 0 (No function) |              | 6.3.2                                   |
| F 109 | 0109              | Analog/logic input Selection (VI terminal) | -    | -   | 0: Voltage signal input (0-10V)<br>1: Current signal input (4-20mA)<br>2: Logic input<br>3: Voltage signal input (0-5V) | 0               |              | 6.2.2<br>6.3.3<br>6.5.2<br>7.2.1<br>7.3 |
| F 110 | 0110              | Always active function selection 2         | -    | -   | 0-123   | 6 (ST)          |              | 6.3.2                                   |
| F 111 | 0111              | Input terminal selection 1A (F)            | -    | -   | 0-201   | 2 (F)           |              | 6.3.3<br>6.5.1                          |
| F 112 | 0112              | Input terminal selection 2A (R)            | -    | -   | 0-201   | 4 (R)           |              | 7.2.1                                   |
| F 113 | 0113              | Input terminal selection 3A (S1)           | -    | -   | 0-201   | 10 (SS1)        |              |   |
| F 114 | 0114              | Input terminal selection 4A (S2)           | -    | -   | 0-201   | 12 (SS2)        |              |   |
| F 115 | 0115              | Input terminal selection 5 (VI)            | -    | -   | 8-55  | 14 (SS3)        |              |   |
| F 127 | 0127              | Sink/source switching                      | -    | -   | 0: Sink, 100: Source<br>1-99, 101-255: invalid  | *1              |              | 6.3.1                                   |
| F 130 | 0130              | Output terminal selection 1A (OUT)         | -    | -   | 0-255   | 4 (LOW)         |              | 6.3.4<br>7.2.2                          |
| F 132 | 0132              | Output terminal selection 2 (FL)           | -    | -   | 0-255   | 10 (FL)         |              |   |
| F 137 | 0137              | Output terminal selection 1B (OUT)         | -    | -   | 0-255   | 255 (always ON) |              |   |

\* 1: Depends upon the setup menu settings. See 11.5.



| Title | Communication No. | Function                              | Unit | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communication | Adjustment range                        | Default setting | User setting | Reference               |
|-------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------|--|---|-----------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| F 139 | 0139              | Output terminal logic selection (OUT) | -    | -  | 0: F 130 and F 137<br>1: F 130 or F 137 | 0               |              | 6.3.4<br>7.2.2          |
| F 144 | 0144              | Factory specific coefficient 1A       | -    | -  | -                                       | -               |              | * 3                     |
| F 151 | 0151              | Input terminal selection 1B (F)       | -    | -  | 0-201                                   | 0               |              | 6.3.3<br>6.5.1<br>7.2.1 |
| F 152 | 0152              | Input terminal selection 2B (R)       | -    | -  | 0-201                                   | 0               |              |                         |
| F 153 | 0153              | Input terminal selection 3B (S1)      | -    | -  | 0-201                                   | 0               |              |                         |
| F 154 | 0154              | Input terminal selection 4B (S2)      | -    | -  | 0-201                                   | 0               |              |                         |
| F 155 | 0155              | Input terminal selection 1C (F)       | -    | -  | 0-201                                   | 0               |              |                         |
| F 156 | 0156              | Input terminal selection 2C (R)       | -    | -  | 0-201                                   | 0               |              |                         |

### • Basic parameter 2

| Title | Communication No. | Function                                    | Unit  | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communication | Adjustment range          | Default setting | User setting | Reference       |
|-------|-------------------|---|-------|--|---------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| F 170 | 0170              | Base frequency 2                            | Hz    | 0.1/0.01                                 | 20.0-400.0                | * 2             |              | 6.4.1           |
| F 171 | 0171              | Base frequency voltage 2                    | V     | 1/0.1                                    | 50-330                    | * 2             |              |                 |
| F 172 | 0172              | Torque boost value 2                        | %     | 0.1/0.1                                  | 0.0-30.0                  | * 1             |              |                 |
| F 173 | 0173              | Motor electronic-thermal protection level 2 | % (A) | 1/1                                      | 10-100                    | 100             |              |                 |
| F 185 | 0185              | Stall prevention level 2                    | % (A) | 1/1                                      | 10-199,<br>200 (disabled) | 150             |              | 6.4.1<br>6.19.2 |

### • Frequency parameters

| Title | Communication No. | Function                      | Unit | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communication | Adjustment range | Default setting | User setting | Reference    |
|-------|-------------------|-------------------------------|------|--|------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| F 201 | 0201              | V1 Setting of input point 1   | %    | 1/1                                      | 0-100            | 0               |              | 6.5.2<br>7.3 |
| F 202 | 0202              | Frequency of V1 input point 1 | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                 | 0.0-400.0        | 0.0             |              |              |
| F 203 | 0203              | Setting of V1 input point 2   | %    | 1/1                                      | 0-100            | 100             |              |              |
| F 204 | 0204              | Frequency of V1 input point 2 | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                 | 0.0-400.0        | * 2             |              |              |
| F 209 | 0209              | Analog input filter           | ms   | 1/1                                      | 4-1000           | 64              |              |              |

\*1: Parameter values vary depending on the capacity. See 11.4.

\*2: Depends upon the setup menu settings. See 11.5.

\*3: Factory specific coefficients are parameters exclusively for manufacturer settings. Do not change these parameters.

| Title   | Communication No. | Function   | Unit | Minimum setting unit<br>Panel/Communication | Adjustment range  | Default setting | User setting | Reference |
|---------|-------------------|--|------|---|---|-----------------|--------------|-----------|
| F 2 4 0 | 0240              | Starting frequency setting                       | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.1-10.0  | 0.5             |              | 6.6.1     |
| F 2 4 1 | 0241              | Operation starting frequency                     | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0- <i>F H</i>   | 0.0             |              | 6.6.2     |
| F 2 4 2 | 0242              | Operation starting frequency hysteresis          | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0- <i>F H</i>   | 0.0             |              |           |
| F 2 4 9 | 0249              | Factory specific coefficient 2A                  | -    | -   | -   | -               |              | * 1       |
| F 2 5 0 | 0250              | DC braking starting frequency                    | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0- <i>F H</i>   | 0.0             |              | 6.7.1     |
| F 2 5 1 | 0251              | DC braking current                               | %(A) | 1/1   | 0-100   | 50              |              |           |
| F 2 5 2 | 0252              | DC braking time                                  | s    | 0.1/0.1                                     | 0.0-25.5  | 1.0             |              |           |
| F 2 5 6 | 0256              | Time limit for lower-limit frequency operation   | s    | 0.1/0.1                                     | 0: Disabled<br>0.1-600.0  | 0.0             |              | 6.8.1     |
| F 2 6 4 | 0264              | External logic input - UP response time          | s    | 0.1/0.1                                     | 0.0-10.0  | 0.1             |              | 6.5.3     |
| F 2 6 5 | 0265              | External logic input - UP frequency steps        | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0- <i>F H</i>   | 0.1             |              |           |
| F 2 6 6 | 0266              | External logic input - DOWN response time        | s    | 0.1/0.1                                     | 0.0-10.0  | 0.1             |              |           |
| F 2 6 7 | 0267              | External logic input - DOWN frequency steps      | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0- <i>F H</i>   | 0.1             |              |           |
| F 2 6 8 | 0268              | Initial value of UP/DOWN frequency               | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | <i>L L - U L</i>  | 0.0             |              |           |
| F 2 6 9 | 0269              | Change of the initial value of UP/DOWN frequency | -    | -   | 0: Not changed<br>1: Setting of <i>F 2 6 8</i> changed when power is turned off | 1               |              |           |
| F 2 7 0 | 0270              | Jump frequency                                   | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0- <i>F H</i>   | 0.0             |              |           |
| F 2 7 1 | 0271              | Jumping width                                    | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0-30.0  | 0.0             |              |           |

\*1: Factory specific coefficients are parameters exclusively for manufacturer settings. Do not change these parameters.

| Title | Communication No. | Function                  | Unit | Minimum setting unit<br>Panel/Communication | Adjustment range | Default setting | User setting | Reference   |
|-------|-------------------|---------------------------|------|---|------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| F287  | 0287              | Preset-speed frequency 8  | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | LL-UL            | 0.0             |              | 3.6<br>6.10 |
| F288  | 0288              | Preset-speed frequency 9  | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | LL-UL            | 0.0             |              |             |
| F289  | 0289              | Preset-speed frequency 10 | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | LL-UL            | 0.0             |              |             |
| F290  | 0290              | Preset-speed frequency 11 | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | LL-UL            | 0.0             |              |             |
| F291  | 0291              | Preset-speed frequency 12 | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | LL-UL            | 0.0             |              |             |
| F292  | 0292              | Preset-speed frequency 13 | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | LL-UL            | 0.0             |              |             |
| F293  | 0293              | Preset-speed frequency 14 | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | LL-UL            | 0.0             |              |             |
| F294  | 0294              | Preset-speed frequency 15 | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | LL-UL            | 0.0             |              |             |

• Operation mode parameters

| Title | Communication No. | Function  | Unit  | Minimum setting unit<br>Panel/Communication | Adjustment range  | Default setting | User setting | Reference |
|-------|-------------------|---|-------|---|---|-----------------|--------------|-----------|
| F300  | 0300              | PWM carrier frequency                                       | kHz   | 1/1   | 2-16  | 12              |              | 6.11      |
| F301  | 0301              | Auto-restart control selection                              | -     | -   | 0: Disabled<br>1: At auto-restart after momentary stop<br>2: At ST terminal off and on<br>3: 1+2<br>4: At start-up      | 0               |              | 6.12.1    |
| F302  | 0302              | Regenerative power ride-through control (Deceleration stop) | -     | -   | 0: Disabled<br>1: Automatic setting<br>2: Slowdown stop   | 0               |              | 6.12.2    |
| F303  | 0303              | Retry selection (number of times)                           | Times | 1/1   | 0: Disabled<br>1-10   | 0               |              | 6.12.3    |
| F305  | 0305              | Overvoltage limit operation (Slowdown stop mode selection)  | -     | -   | 0: Enabled<br>1: Disabled<br>2: Enabled (Quick deceleration control)<br>3: Enabled (Dynamic quick deceleration control) | 2               |              | 6.12.4    |

| Title | Communication | Function   | Unit | Minimum setting unit<br>Panel/Communication | Adjustment range   | Default setting | User setting | Reference |
|-------|---------------|--|------|---|--|-----------------|--------------|-----------|
| F307  | 0307          | Supply voltage correction (output voltage limitation)                      | -    | -   | 0: Supply voltage uncorrected, output voltage limited<br>1: Supply voltage corrected, output voltage limited<br>2: Supply voltage uncorrected, output voltage unlimited<br>3: Supply voltage corrected, output voltage unlimited | * 1             |              | 6.12.5    |
| F311  | 0311          | Reverse-run prohibition  | -    | -   | 0: Forward/reverse run permitted<br>1: Reverse run prohibited<br>2: Forward run prohibited   | 0               |              | 6.12.6    |
| F312  | 0312          | Random mode  | -    | -   | 0: Disabled<br>1: Automatic setting  | 0               |              | 6.11      |
| F316  | 0316          | Carrier frequency control mode selection                                   | -    | -   | 0: Carrier frequency without reduction<br>1: Carrier frequency with automatic reduction  | 1               |              |           |
| F359  | 0359          | PID control waiting time   | s    | 1/1   | 0-2400   | 0               |              | 6.13      |
| F360  | 0360          | PID control  | -    | -   | 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled  | 0               |              |           |
| F362  | 0362          | Proportional gain  | -    | 0.01/0.01                                   | 0.01-100.0   | 0.30            |              |           |
| F363  | 0363          | Integral gain  | -    | 0.01/0.01                                   | 0.01-100.0   | 0.20            |              |           |
| F366  | 0366          | Differential gain  | -    | 0.01/0.01                                   | 0.00-2.5   | 0.00            |              |           |
| F380  | 0380          | PID forward/reverse characteristics selection                              | -    | -   | 0: Forward<br>1: Reverse   | 0               |              |           |
| F391  | 0391          | Auto-stop hysteresis in case of lower-limit frequency continuous operation | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0-4.4  | 0.2             |              | 6.8.1     |

\* 1: Depends upon the setup menu settings. See 11.5.

• Torque boost parameters 1

| Title | Communication No. | Function                     | Unit  | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communication | Adjustment range  | Default setting | User setting | Reference |
|-------|-------------------|------------------------------|-------|--|---|-----------------|--------------|-----------|
| F400  | 0400              | Auto-tuning                  | -     | -  | 0: Auto-tuning disabled<br>1: Initialization of F402 (reset to 0)<br>2: Auto-tuning executed (after execution: 0) | 0               |              | 6.14      |
| F401  | 0401              | Slip frequency gain          | %     | 1/1                                      | 0-150   | 50              |              |           |
| F402  | 0402              | Automatic torque boost value | %     | 0.1/0.1                                  | 0.0-30.0  | *1              |              |           |
| F405  | 0405              | Motor rated capacity         | kW    | 0.01/0.01                                | 0.01-5.50   | *1              |              |           |
| F412  | 0412              | Motor specific coefficient 1 | -     | -  | -   | -               |              | *3        |
| F415  | 0415              | Motor rated current          | A     | 0.1/0.1                                  | 0.1-30.0  | *1              |              | 6.14      |
| F416  | 0416              | Motor no-load current        | %     | 1/1                                      | 10-90   | *1              |              |           |
| F417  | 0417              | Rated motor speed            | min-1 | 1/1                                      | 100-32000   | *2              |              |           |
| F458  | 0458              | Motor specific coefficient 2 | -     | -  | -   | -               |              | *3        |
| F459  | 0459              | Load inertia moment ratio    | Times | 0.1/0.1                                  | 0.1-100.0   | 1.0             |              | 6.14      |
| F460  | 0460              | Motor specific coefficient 3 | -     | -  | -   | -               |              | *3        |
| F461  | 0461              | Motor specific coefficient 4 | -     | -  | -   | -               |              |           |
| F462  | 0462              | Motor specific coefficient 5 | -     | -  | -   | -               |              |           |
| F467  | 0467              | Motor specific coefficient 6 | -     | -  | -   | -               |              |           |

• Input/output parameters 2

| Title | Communication No. | Function      | Unit | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communication | Adjustment range | Default setting | User setting | Reference |
|-------|-------------------|---------------|------|--|------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------|
| F470  | 0470              | V1 input bias | -    | 1/1                                      | 0-255            | 128             |              | 6.5.4     |
| F471  | 0471              | V1 input gain | -    | 1/1                                      | 0-255            | 128             |              |           |

• Torque boost parameters 2

| Title | Communications No. | Function                     | Unit | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communications | Adjustment range | Default setting | User setting | Reference |
|-------|--------------------|------------------------------|------|---|------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------|
| F480  | 0480               | Motor specific coefficient 7 | -    | -   | -                | -               |              | *3        |
| F485  | 0485               | Motor specific coefficient 8 | -    | -   | -                | -               |              |           |
| F495  | 0495               | Motor specific coefficient 9 | -    | -   | -                | -               |              |           |

\*1: Parameter values vary depending on the capacity. See 11.4.

\*2: Depends upon the setup menu settings. See 11.5.

\*3: Motor specific coefficient 1 to 9 are parameters exclusively for manufacturer settings. Do not change these parameter.

• Acceleration/deceleration time parameters

| Title | Communication No. | Function  | Unit | Minimum setting unit<br>Panel/Communication | Adjustment range                              | Default setting | User setting | Reference |
|-------|-------------------|---|------|---|---|-----------------|--------------|-----------|
| F500  | 0500              | Acceleration time 2                                   | s    | 0.1/0.1                                     | 0.0-3000                                      | 10.0            |              | 6.15      |
| F501  | 0501              | Deceleration time 2                                   | s    | 0.1/0.1                                     | 0.0-3000                                      | 10.0            |              |           |
| F502  | 0502              | Acceleration/deceleration 1 pattern                   | -    | -   | 0: Linear<br>1: S-pattern 1<br>2: S-pattern 2 | 0               |              |           |
| F503  | 0503              | Acceleration/deceleration 2 pattern                   | -    | -   |   | 0               |              |           |
| F505  | 0505              | Acceleration/deceleration 1 and 2 switching frequency | Hz   | 0.1/0.01                                    | 0.0 (disabled)<br>0.1- $\frac{1}{\sqrt{L}}$   | 0.0             |              |           |

• Protection parameters

| Title | Communication No. | Function                                 | Unit     | Minimum setting unit<br>Panel/Communication | Adjustment range   | Default setting | User setting | Reference     |
|-------|-------------------|--|----------|---|--|-----------------|--------------|---------------|
| F601  | 0601              | Stall prevention level 1                 | %<br>(A) | 1/1   | 10-199,<br>200 (disabled)  | 150             |              | 6.16.2        |
| F602  | 0602              | Inverter trip retention selection        | -        | -   | 0: Cleared with power off<br>1: Retained with power off                                    | 0               |              | 6.16.3        |
| F603  | 0603              | Emergency stop selection                 | -        | -   | 0: Coast stop<br>1: Slowdown stop<br>2: Emergency DC braking                               | 0               |              | 6.16.4        |
| F605  | 0605              | Output phase failure detection selection | -        | -   | 0: Disabled<br>1: At start-up (only one time after power on)<br>2: At start-up (each time) | 0               |              | 6.16.5        |
| F607  | 0607              | Motor 150% overload detection time       | s        | 1/1   | 10-2400  | 300             |              | 3.5<br>6.16.1 |
| F608  | 0608              | Input phase failure detection selection  | -        | -   | 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled  | 1               |              | 6.16.6        |

| Title | Communication No. | Function  | Unit         | Minimum setting unit<br>Panel/Communication | Adjustment range   | Default setting | User setting | Reference      |
|-------|-------------------|---|--------------|---|--|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| F609  | 0609              | Small current detection hysteresis                            | %            | 1/1   | 1-20   | 10              |              | 6.16.7         |
| F610  | 0610              | Small current trip/alarm selection                            | -            | -   | 0: Alarm only<br>1: Tripping   | 0               |              |                |
| F611  | 0611              | Small current detection current                               | %<br>(A)     | 1/1   | 0-150  | 0               |              |                |
| F612  | 0612              | Small current detection time                                  | s            | 1/1   | 0-255  | 0               |              |                |
| F613  | 0613              | Detection of output short-circuit at start-up                 | -            | -   | 0: Each time (standard pulse)<br>1: Only one time after power on (standard pulse)<br>2: Each time (short pulse)<br>3: Only one time after power on (short pulse)   | 0               |              | 6.16.8         |
| F615  | 0615              | Over-torque trip/alarm selection                              | -            | -   | 0: Alarm only<br>1: Tripping   | 0               |              | 6.16.9         |
| F616  | 0616              | Over-torque detection level                                   | %            | 1/1   | 0 (disabled)<br>1-200  | 150             |              |                |
| F618  | 0618              | Over-torque detection time                                    | s            | 0.1/0.1                                     | 0.0-10.0   | 0.5             |              |                |
| F619  | 0619              | Over-torque detection hysteresis                              | %            | 1/1   | 0-100  | 10              |              |                |
| F620  | 0620              | Cooling fan ON/OFF control                                    | -            | -   | 0: ON/OFF control<br>1: Always ON  | 0               |              | 6.16.10        |
| F621  | 0621              | Cumulative operation time alarm setting                       | 100<br>hours | 0.1/0.1<br>(=10 hours)                      | 0.0-999.9  | 610             |              | 6.16.11        |
| F627  | 0627              | Undervoltage trip/alarm selection                             | -            | -   | 0: Alarm only<br>(detection level below 64%)<br>1: Tripping<br>(detection level below 64%)<br>2: Alarm only<br>(detection level 50% or below, AC reactor required) | 0               |              | 6.16.12        |
| F631  | 0631              | Factory specific coefficient 6A                               | -            | -   | -  | -               |              | * 1            |
| F632  | 0632              | Electronic thermal memory                                     | -            | -   | 0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled  | 0               |              | 5.13<br>6.16.1 |
| F633  | 0633              | VI analog input break detection level                         | %            | 1/1   | 0: Disabled,<br>1-100  | 0               |              | 6.16.13        |
| F634  | 0634              | Annual average ambient temperature (parts replacement alarms) | -            | -   | 1: -10 to +10°C<br>2: 11-20°C<br>3: 21-30°C<br>4: 31-40°C<br>5: 41-50°C<br>6: 51-60°C  | 3               |              | 6.16.14        |

\*1: Factory specific coefficients are parameters exclusively for manufacturer settings. Do not change these parameters.

- Output parameters

| Title   | Communication No. | Function   | Unit | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communication | Adjustment range   | Default setting | User setting | Reference |
|---------|-------------------|--|------|--|--|-----------------|--------------|-----------|
| F 6 6 9 | 0669              | Logic output/pulse train output selection (OUT-NO) | -    | -  | 0: Logic output<br>1: Pulse train output   | 0               |              | 6.17.1    |
| F 6 7 6 | 0676              | Pulse train output function selection (OUT-NO)     | -    | -  | 0: Output frequency<br>1: Output current<br>2: Frequency reference<br>3: Input voltage (DC detection)<br>4: Output voltage (command value)<br>5-11: -<br>12: Frequency setting value (after compensation)<br>13: VI input value<br>14: -<br>15: Fixed output 1 (output current 100% equivalent)<br>16: Fixed output 2 (output current 50% equivalent)<br>17: Fixed output 3 (Other than the output current)<br>18: Communication data<br>19 to 22: - | 0               |              | 6.17.1    |
| F 6 7 7 | 0677              | Maximum numbers of pulse train                     | kpps | 0.01/0.01                                | 0.50-1.60  | 0.80            |              |           |
| F 6 7 8 | 0678              | Factory specific coefficient 6B                    | -    | -  | -  | -               |              | * 1       |
| F 6 8 1 | 0681              | Analog output signal selection                     | -    | -  | 0: Meter option (0 to 1 mA)<br>1: Current (0 to 20 mA) output<br>2: Voltage (0 to 10 V) output   | 0               |              | 6.17.2    |
| F 6 8 4 | 0684              | Factory specific coefficient 6C                    | -    | -  | -  | -               |              | * 1       |
| F 6 9 1 | 0691              | Inclination characteristic of analog output        | -    | -  | 0: Negative inclination (downward slope)<br>1: Positive inclination (upward slope)   | 1               |              | 6.17.2    |
| F 6 9 2 | 0692              | Analog output bias                                 | %    | 0.1/0.1                                  | -1.0 ~ +100.0  | 0               |              |           |
| F 6 9 3 | 0693              | Factory specific coefficient 6D                    | -    | -  | -  | -               |              | * 1       |

\*1: Factory specific coefficients are parameters exclusively for manufacturer settings. Do not change these parameters.

- Operation panel parameters

| Title   | Communication No. | Function                                    | Unit  | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communication | Adjustment range   | Default setting | User setting | Reference |
|---------|-------------------|---|-------|--|--|-----------------|--------------|-----------|
| F 7 0 0 | 0700              | Parameter write protection selection        | -     | -  | 0: Permitted<br>1: Panel and extension panel inhibited<br>2: 1 + RS-485 communications inhibited | 0               |              | 6.18.1    |
| F 7 0 1 | 0701              | Current/voltage unit selection              | -     | -  | 0: %<br>1: A (ampere)/V (volt)   | 0               |              | 6.18.2    |
| F 7 0 2 | 0702              | Free unit display scale                     | Times | 0.01/0.01                                | 0.00: Disabled (display of frequency)<br>0.01-200.0  | 0.00            |              | 6.18.3    |
| F 7 0 7 | 0707              | Free step (1-step rotation of setting dial) | Hz    | 0.01/0.01                                | 0.00: Disabled<br>0.01-F H   | 0.00            |              | 6.18.4    |



| Title   | Communication No. | Function   | Unit | Minimum setting unit<br>Panel/Communication | Adjustment range  | Default setting | User | Reference       |
|---------|-------------------|--|------|---|---|-----------------|------|-----------------|
| F 7 1 0 | 0710              | Initial panel display selection                      | -    | -   | 0: Operation frequency (Hz/free unit)<br>1: Output current (%A)<br>2: Frequency setting value (Hz/free unit)<br>3 to 17: -<br>18: Arbitrary display according to communications | 0               |      | 6.18.5<br>8.2.1 |
| F 7 1 1 | 0711              | Status monitor 1                                     | -    | -   | 0: Operation frequency (Hz/free unit)<br>1: Output current (%A)<br>2: Frequency setting value (Hz/free unit)  | 2               |      | 8.2.1<br>8.3.2  |
| F 7 1 2 | 0712              | Status monitor 2                                     | -    | -   | 3: Input voltage (DC detection) (%V)<br>4: Output voltage (command value) (%V)  | 1               |      |                 |
| F 7 1 3 | 0713              | Status monitor 3                                     | -    | -   | 5: Input power (kW)<br>6: Output power (kW)<br>7: Torque (%)  | 3               |      |                 |
| F 7 1 4 | 0714              | Status monitor 4                                     | -    | -   | 8: Torque current (%A)<br>9 to 11: -  | 4               |      |                 |
| F 7 1 5 | 0715              | Status monitor 5                                     | -    | -   | 12: Frequency setting value (after compensation)<br>13 to 22: -   | 27              |      |                 |
| F 7 1 6 | 0716              | Status monitor 6                                     | -    | -   | 23: PID feedback value (Hz/free unit)<br>24 to 26: -<br>27: Drive load factor (%)   | 0               |      |                 |
| F 7 2 0 | 0720              | Initial remote keypad display selection              | -    | -   | 0: Operation frequency (Hz/free unit)<br>1: Output current (%A)<br>2: Frequency setting value (Hz/free unit)<br>3 to 17: -<br>18: Arbitrary display according to communications | 0               |      | 6.18.5<br>8.2.1 |
| F 7 3 0 | 0730              | Panel frequency setting prohibition (F 7)            | -    | -   | 0: Permitted<br>1: Prohibited   | 0               |      | 6.18.1          |
| F 7 3 2 | 0732              | Local/remote operation prohibition for remote keypad | -    | -   | 0: Permitted<br>1: Prohibited   | 1               |      |                 |
| F 7 3 3 | 0733              | Panel operation prohibition (RUN/STOP keys)          | -    | -   | 0: Permitted<br>1: Prohibited   | 0               |      |                 |
| F 7 3 4 | 0734              | Prohibition of panel emergency stop operation        | -    | -   | 0: Permitted<br>1: Prohibited   | 0               |      |                 |
| F 7 3 5 | 0735              | Prohibition of panel reset operation                 | -    | -   | 0: Permitted<br>1: Prohibited   | 0               |      |                 |
| F 7 3 6 | 0736              | Change prohibition during operation                  | -    | -   | 0: Permitted<br>1: Prohibited   | 1               |      |                 |
| F 7 3 8 | 0738              | Password setting (F 7 0 0)                           | -    | -   | 0: No password set<br>1-9998<br>9999: Password set  | 0               |      |                 |
| F 7 3 9 | 0739              | Password examination                                 | -    | -   | 0: No password set<br>1-9998<br>9999: Password set  | 0               |      |                 |

| Title | Communication No. | Function                        | Unit | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communication | Adjustment range                        | Default setting | User | Reference |
|-------|-------------------|---------------------------------|------|--|---|-----------------|------|-----------|
| F 746 | 0746              | Factory specific coefficient 7A | -    | -  | -                                       | -               |      | * 1       |
| F 751 | 0751              | Easy setting mode parameter 1   | -    | -  | 0-999<br>(Set by communications number) | 3               |      | 4.5       |
| F 752 | 0752              | Easy setting mode parameter 2   | -    | -  |   | 4               |      |           |
| F 753 | 0753              | Easy setting mode parameter 3   | -    | -  |   | 9               |      |           |
| F 754 | 0754              | Easy setting mode parameter 4   | -    | -  |   | 10              |      |           |
| F 755 | 0755              | Easy setting mode parameter 5   | -    | -  |   | 600             |      |           |
| F 756 | 0756              | Easy setting mode parameter 6   | -    | -  |   | 6               |      |           |
| F 757 | 0757              | Easy setting mode parameter 7   | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 758 | 0758              | Easy setting mode parameter 8   | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 759 | 0759              | Easy setting mode parameter 9   | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 760 | 0760              | Easy setting mode parameter 10  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 761 | 0761              | Easy setting mode parameter 11  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 762 | 0762              | Easy setting mode parameter 12  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 763 | 0763              | Easy setting mode parameter 13  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 764 | 0764              | Easy setting mode parameter 14  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 765 | 0765              | Easy setting mode parameter 15  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 766 | 0766              | Easy setting mode parameter 16  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 767 | 0767              | Easy setting mode parameter 17  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 768 | 0768              | Easy setting mode parameter 18  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 769 | 0769              | Easy setting mode parameter 19  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 770 | 0770              | Easy setting mode parameter 20  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 771 | 0771              | Easy setting mode parameter 21  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 772 | 0772              | Easy setting mode parameter 22  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 773 | 0773              | Easy setting mode parameter 23  | -    | -  |   | 999             |      |           |
| F 774 | 0774              | Easy setting mode parameter 24  | -    | -  | 50                                      |                 |      |           |
| F 799 | 0799              | Factory specific coefficient 7B | -    | -  | -                                       | -               |      | * 1       |

\*1: Factory specific coefficients are parameters exclusively for manufacturer settings. Do not change these parameters.

• Communication parameters

| Title | Communication No. | Function                                   | Unit | Minimum setting unit Panel/Communication | Adjustment range  | Default setting | User setting | Reference |
|-------|-------------------|--|------|--|---|-----------------|--------------|-----------|
| F800  | 0800              | Baud rate                                  | -    | -  | 3: 9600bps<br>4: 19200bps<br>5: 38400bps  | 4               |              | 6.19      |
| F801  | 0801              | Parity                                     | -    | -  | 0: NON (No parity)<br>1: EVEN (Even parity)<br>2: ODD (Odd parity)                                  | 1               |              |           |
| F802  | 0802              | Inverter number                            | -    | 1/1                                      | 0-247   | 0               |              |           |
| F803  | 0803              | Communication time-out time                | s    | 0.1/0.1                                  | 0.0: Disabled,<br>0.1-100.0   | 0.0             |              |           |
| F804  | 0804              | Communication time-out action              | -    | -  | 0: Alarm only<br>1: Trip (Coast stop)<br>2: Trip (Slowdown stop)                                    | 0               |              |           |
| F808  | 0808              | Communication time-out detection condition | -    | -  | 0: Always<br>1: When F80d or C80d communications is selected<br>2: 1 + during operation             | 1               |              |           |
| F829  | 0829              | Selection of communication protocol        | -    | -  | 0: Toshiba inverter protocol<br>1: Modbus RTU protocol  | 0               |              |           |
| F870  | 0870              | Block write data 1                         | -    | -  | 0: No selection<br>1: Command information<br>2: -   | 0               |              |           |
| F871  | 0871              | Block write data 2                         | -    | -  | 3: Frequency setting<br>4: Output data on the terminal board<br>5: Analog output for communications | 0               |              |           |
| F875  | 0875              | Block read data 1                          | -    | -  | 0: No selection<br>1: Status information<br>2: Output frequency<br>3: Output current                | 0               |              |           |
| F876  | 0876              | Block read data 2                          | -    | -  | 4: Output voltage<br>5: Alarm information<br>6: PID feedback value                                  | 0               |              |           |
| F877  | 0877              | Block read data 3                          | -    | -  | 7: Input terminal board monitor<br>8: Output terminal board monitor                                 | 0               |              |           |
| F878  | 0878              | Block read data 4                          | -    | -  | 9: V1 terminal block monitor  | 0               |              |           |
| F879  | 0879              | Block read data 5                          | -    | -  |   | 0               |              |           |
| F880  | 0880              | Free notes                                 | -    | 1/1                                      | 0-65535   | 0               |              | 6.20      |

Note: Chapter 5, 6 or 7 indicated in the reference column refers to item "E6581595" in the instruction manual.

## 11.4 Default settings by inverter rating

| Inverter type | Torque boost value        | Automatic torque boost value | Motor rated capacity | Motor rated current | Motor no-load current |
|---------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
|               | $\omega b / F 172$<br>(%) | $F 402$<br>(%)               | $F 405$<br>(kW)      | $F 415$<br>(A)      | $F 416$<br>(%)        |
| VFNC3S-1001P  | 6.0                       | 10.3                         | 0.10                 | 0.6                 | 75                    |
| VFNC3S-1002P  | 6.0                       | 8.3                          | 0.20                 | 1.2                 | 70                    |
| VFNC3S-1004P  | 6.0                       | 6.2                          | 0.40                 | 2.0                 | 65                    |
| VFNC3S-1007P  | 6.0                       | 5.8                          | 0.75                 | 3.4                 | 60                    |
| VFNC3S-2001PL | 6.0                       | 10.3                         | 0.10                 | 0.6                 | 75                    |
| VFNC3S-2002PL | 6.0                       | 8.3                          | 0.20                 | 1.2                 | 70                    |
| VFNC3S-2004PL | 6.0                       | 6.2                          | 0.40                 | 2.0                 | 65                    |
| VFNC3S-2007PL | 6.0                       | 5.8                          | 0.75                 | 3.4                 | 60                    |
| VFNC3S-2015PL | 6.0                       | 4.3                          | 1.50                 | 6.2                 | 55                    |
| VFNC3S-2022PL | 5.0                       | 4.1                          | 2.20                 | 8.9                 | 52                    |
| VFNC3-2001P   | 6.0                       | 10.3                         | 0.10                 | 0.6                 | 75                    |
| VFNC3-2002P   | 6.0                       | 8.3                          | 0.20                 | 1.2                 | 70                    |
| VFNC3-2004P   | 6.0                       | 6.2                          | 0.40                 | 2.0                 | 65                    |
| VFNC3-2007P   | 6.0                       | 5.8                          | 0.75                 | 3.4                 | 60                    |
| VFNC3-2015P   | 6.0                       | 4.3                          | 1.50                 | 6.2                 | 55                    |
| VFNC3-2022P   | 5.0                       | 4.1                          | 2.20                 | 8.9                 | 52                    |
| VFNC3-2037P   | 5.0                       | 3.4                          | 4.00                 | 14.8                | 48                    |

## 11.5 Default settings by setup menu

| Setting        | Main regions  | Max. frequency | Frequency  | Base frequency voltage           | Sink/source switching | Supply voltage correction (output voltage limitation) | Motor rated speed               |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|--|----------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---------------------------------|
|                |               | $F H$<br>(Hz)  | $\omega L / \omega L /$<br>$F 170 / F 204$<br>(Hz) | $\omega L \omega / F 171$<br>(V) | $F 127$               | $F 307$   | $F 417$<br>(min <sup>-1</sup> ) |
| $\omega P$     | Japan         | 80.0           | 60.0   | 200                              | 0 (Sink)              | 3   | 1710                            |
| $\omega S A$   | North America | 60.0           | 60.0   | 230                              | 0 (Sink)              | 2   | 1710                            |
| $\omega S I A$ | Asia          | 50.0           | 50.0   | 230                              | 0 (Sink)              | 2   | 1410                            |
| $\omega U$     | Europe        | 50.0           | 50.0   | 230                              | 100 (Source)          | 2   | 1410                            |

## 11.6 Input Terminal Function

● Table of input terminal functions 1

| Function No. | Code  | Function   | Action   |
|--------------|-------|--|--|
| 0, 1         | -     | No function  | Disabled   |
| 2            | F     | Forward run command                                    | ON: Forward run, OFF: Slowdown stop  |
| 3            | FN    | Inversion of forward run command                       | Inversion of F   |
| 4            | R     | Reverse run command                                    | ON: Reverse run, OFF: Slowdown stop  |
| 5            | RN    | Inversion of reverse run command                       | Inversion of R   |
| 6            | ST    | Standby  | ON: Ready for operation,<br>OFF: Coast stop (gate OFF)   |
| 7            | STN   | Inversion of standby                                   | Inversion of ST  |
| 8            | RES   | Reset command  | ON: Acceptance of reset command,<br>ON → OFF: Trip reset   |
| 9            | RESN  | Inversion of reset command                             | Inversion of RES   |
| 10           | SS1   | Preset-speed command 1                                 | Selection of 15-speed SS1 to SS4 (SS1N to SS4N) (4 bits)   |
| 11           | SS1N  | Inversion of preset-speed command 1                    |  |
| 12           | SS2   | Preset-speed command 2                                 |  |
| 13           | SS2N  | Inversion of preset-speed command 2                    |  |
| 14           | SS3   | Preset-speed command 3                                 |  |
| 15           | SS3N  | Inversion of preset-speed command 3                    |  |
| 16           | SS4   | Preset-speed command 4                                 |  |
| 17           | SS4N  | Inversion of preset-speed command 4                    |  |
| 18           | JOG   | Jog run mode   | ON: Jogging mode (fixed at 5Hz),<br>OFF: Jog run canceled  |
| 19           | JOGN  | Inversion of jog run mode                              | Inversion of JOG   |
| 20           | EXT   | Emergency stop by external signal                      | ON: $\bar{E}$ trip stop  |
| 21           | EXTN  | Inversion of emergency stop by external signal         | Inversion of EXT   |
| 22           | DB    | DC braking command                                     | ON: DC braking, OFF: Brake canceled  |
| 23           | DBN   | Inversion of DC braking command                        | Inversion of DB  |
| 24           | AD2   | 2nd acceleration/deceleration                          | ON: Acceleration/deceleration 2,<br>OFF: Acceleration/deceleration 1   |
| 25           | AD2N  | Inversion of 2nd acceleration/deceleration             | Inversion of AD2   |
| 28           | VF2   | 2nd V/F control mode switching                         | ON: 2nd V/F control mode<br>(V/F fixed, $F170, F171, F172, F173$ )<br>OFF: 1st V/F control mode<br>( $P\bar{E}$ setting, $u\bar{L}, uL, u\bar{b}, bHr$ ) |
| 29           | VF2N  | Inversion of 2nd V/F control switching                 | Inversion of VF2   |
| 32           | OCS2  | 2nd stall prevention level                             | ON: Enabled at the value of $F185$<br>OFF: Enabled at the value of $F601$  |
| 33           | OCS2N | Inversion of 2nd stall prevention level                | Inversion of OCS2  |
| 36           | PID   | PID control prohibition                                | ON: PID control prohibited<br>OFF: PID control enabled   |
| 37           | PIDN  | Inversion of PID control prohibition                   | Inversion of PID   |
| 48           | SCLC  | Forced local from communication                        | Enabled during communication   |
| 49           | SCLCN | Inversion of forced local from communication           | ON: Local (Setting of $[CND], [FND]$ )<br>OFF: Communication   |
| 50           | HD    | Operation hold (hold of 3-wire operation)              | Inversion of SCLC  |
| 51           | HDN   | Inversion of operation hold (hold of 3-wire operation) | ON: F (forward run), R: (reverse run) held, 3-wire operation<br>OFF: Slowdown stop   |
| 52           | IDC   | PID integral/differential clear                        | Inversion of HD  |
| 53           | IDCN  | Inversion of PID integral/differential clear           | ON: Integral/differential clear, OFF: Clear canceled   |
| 54           | DR    | PID characteristics switching                          | Inversion of IDC   |
| 55           | DRN   | Inversion of PID characteristics switching             | ON: Inverted characteristics of $F380$ selection<br>OFF: Characteristics of $F380$ selection   |

- Table of input terminal functions 2

| Function No. | Code  | Function   | Action   |
|--------------|-------|--|--|
| 88           | UP    | Frequency UP from external logic input                         | ON: Frequency increased,<br>OFF: Frequency increase canceled   |
| 89           | UPN   | Inversion of frequency UP from external logic input            | Inversion of UP  |
| 90           | DWN   | Frequency DOWN from external logic input                       | ON: Frequency decreased,<br>OFF: Frequency decrease canceled   |
| 91           | DWNN  | Inversion of frequency DOWN from external logic input          | Inversion of DWN   |
| 92           | CLR   | Clear frequency UP/DOWN from external logic input              | OFF → ON: Clear frequency UP/DOWN  |
| 93           | CLRn  | Inversion of clear frequency UP/DOWN from external logic input | Inversion of CLR   |
| 96           | FRR   | Coast stop command   | ON: Coast stop (gate OFF),<br>OFF: Coast stop canceled   |
| 97           | FRRN  | Inversion of coast stop command                                | Inversion of FRP   |
| 106          | FMTB  | Frequency setting mode terminal board VI                       | ON: Terminal block (VI) enabled<br>OFF: Setting of $F\ \dot{\alpha}\ \dot{\alpha}\ \dot{\alpha}$   |
| 107          | FMTBN | Inversion of frequency setting mode terminal board VI block    | Inversion of FMTB  |
| 108          | CMTB  | Command mode terminal board                                    | ON: Terminal block enabled<br>OFF: Setting of $C\ \dot{\alpha}\ \dot{\alpha}\ \dot{\alpha}$  |
| 109          | CMTBN | Inversion of command mode terminal board                       | Inversion of CMTB  |
| 110          | PWE   | Parameter editing permission                                   | ON: Parameter editing enabled<br>OFF: Setting of $F\ \dot{\alpha}\ \dot{\alpha}\ \dot{\alpha}$   |
| 111          | PWEN  | Inversion of parameter editing permission                      | Inversion of PWE   |
| 122          | FST   | Forced deceleration command                                    | ON: Forced deceleration command (Automatic deceleration)<br>OFF: Forced deceleration canceled (Note that operation is resumed when forced deceleration is canceled.) |
| 123          | FSTN  | Inversion of forced deceleration command                       | Inversion of FST   |
| 200          | PWP   | Parameter editing prohibition                                  | ON: Changes to parameter settings prohibited (read only)<br>OFF: Setting of $F\ \dot{\alpha}\ \dot{\alpha}\ \dot{\alpha}$  |
| 201          | PWPN  | Inversion of parameter editing prohibition                     | Inversion of PWP   |

Note 1: Function numbers 26, 27, 30, 31, 34, 35, 38 to 47, 50, 51, 56 to 87, 94, 95, 98 to 105, 112 to 121 and 124 to 199 are "No function assigned."

Note 2: Function numbers are different from those on the VF-nC1. Pay attention to this when substituting function numbers.

## 11.7 Output Terminal Function

● Table of output terminal functions 1

| Function No. | Code  | Function   | Action  |
|--------------|-------|--|---|
| 0            | LL    | Frequency lower limit  | ON: The output frequency exceeds the $LL$ setting.<br>OFF: The output frequency is equal to or less than $LL$ .   |
| 1            | LLN   | Inversion of frequency lower limit   | Inversion of $LL$ .   |
| 2            | UL    | Frequency upper limit  | ON: The output frequency is equal to or higher than the $UL$ setting.<br>OFF: The output frequency is less than $UL$ .  |
| 3            | ULN   | Inversion of frequency upper limit   | Inversion of $UL$ .   |
| 4            | LOW   | Low-speed detection signal   | ON: The output frequency is equal to or more than $F100$ .<br>OFF: The output frequency is less than $F100$ .   |
| 5            | LOWN  | Inversion of low-speed detection signal  | Inversion of LOW  |
| 6            | RCH   | Output frequency attainment signal (acceleration/deceleration completed)                           | ON: The output frequency is within command frequency $\pm F102$ setting.<br>OFF: The output frequency exceeds the command frequency $\pm F102$ setting.   |
| 7            | RCHN  | Inversion of output frequency attainment signal (inversion of acceleration/deceleration completed) | Inversion of RCHF   |
| 8            | RCHF  | Set frequency attainment signal  | ON: The output frequency is within the $F101 \pm F102$ setting.<br>OFF: The output frequency exceeds the $F101 \pm F102$ setting.   |
| 9            | RCHFN | Inversion of set frequency attainment signal   | Inversion of RCHF   |
| 10           | FL    | Fault signal (trip output)   | ON: Inverter tripped<br>OFF: Inverter not tripped   |
| 11           | FLN   | Inversion of fault signal (inversion of trip output)   | Inversion of FL   |
| 14           | POC   | Over-current pre-alarm   | ON: The output current is equal to the $F601$ setting or more.<br>OFF: The output current is less than $F601$ .   |
| 15           | POCN  | Inversion of over-current pre-alarm  | Inversion of POC  |
| 16           | POL   | Overload detection pre-alarm   | ON: 50% or more of calculated value of overload protection level<br>OFF: Less than 50% of calculated value of overload protection level   |
| 17           | POLN  | Inversion overload pre-alarm   | Inversion of POL  |
| 20           | POH   | Overheat pre-alarm   | ON: Approx. 95°C or more of IGBT element<br>OFF: Less than approx. 95°C of IGBT element (90°C or less after detection is turned on)   |
| 21           | POHN  | Inversion of overheat pre-alarm  | Inversion of POH  |
| 22           | POP   | Overvoltage pre-alarm  | ON: Overvoltage limit in operation<br>OFF: Overvoltage detection canceled   |
| 23           | POPON | Inversion of overvoltage pre-alarm   | Inversion of POP  |
| 24           | MOFF  | Power circuit undervoltage detection   | ON: Power circuit undervoltage (MOFF) detected<br>OFF: Undervoltage detection canceled  |
| 25           | MOFFN | Inversion of power circuit undervoltage detection  | Inversion of MOFF   |
| 26           | UC    | Small current detection  | ON: The output current is equal to or less than $F511$ for $F512$ set time.<br>OFF: The output current is equal to or more than $F511$ . ( $F511 + F509$ or larger after detection is turned on.) |
| 27           | UCN   | Inversion of small current detection   | Inversion of UC   |
| 28           | OT    | Over-torque detection  | ON: The torque is equal to or more than $F615$ for $F618$ set time.<br>OFF: The torque is less than $F615$ . ( $F615 - F619$ or less after detection turns on)                                    |
| 29           | OTN   | Inversion of over-torque detection   | Inversion of OT   |

• Table of output terminal functions 2

| Function No. | Code  | Function   | Action  |
|--------------|-------|--|---|
| 40           | RUN   | Run  | ON: While operation frequency is output or while DC braking is in operation ( <i>d b</i> )<br>OFF: Operation stopped  |
| 41           | RUNN  | Inversion of run/stop                              | Inversion of RUN  |
| 56           | COT   | Cumulative operation time alarm                    | ON: Cumulative operation time is equal to or more than $F 5 \bar{2} \bar{1}$ .<br>OFF: The cumulative operation time is less than $F 5 \bar{2} \bar{1}$ .                         |
| 57           | COTN  | Inversion of cumulative operation time alarm       | Inversion of COT  |
| 60           | FR    | Forward/reverse run                                | ON: Forward run<br>OFF: Reverse run<br>(The previous status is held while motor operation is stopped.)  |
| 61           | FRN   | Inversion of forward/reverse run                   | Inversion of FR   |
| 78           | COME  | RS485 communication error                          | ON: Communication error occurred,<br>OFF: Communication normal  |
| 79           | COMEN | Inversion of RS485 communication error             | Inversion of COME   |
| 92           | DATA  | Assigned data output                               | ON: Bit 0 of FA50 is ON.<br>OFF: Bit 0 of FA50 is OFF.  |
| 93           | DATAN | Inversion of assigned data output                  | Inversion of DATA   |
| 128          | LTA   | Parts replacement alarm                            | ON: The parts replacement time (any one of cooling fan, control board capacitor, or main circuit capacitor) has elapsed.<br>OFF: The parts replacement time has not been reached. |
| 129          | LTAN  | Inversion of parts replacement alarm               | Inversion of LTA  |
| 146          | FLR   | Fault signal (output also at a retry)              | ON: The inverter is tripped or a retry is in progress.<br>OFF: The inverter is not tripped or a retry is not in progress.   |
| 147          | FLRN  | Inversion of fault signal (output also at a retry) | Inversion of FLR  |
| 254          | AOFF  | Always OFF   | Always OFF  |
| 255          | AON   | Always ON  | Always ON   |

Note 1: Even numbers are always OFF and odd numbers are always ON since function numbers 12, 13, 18, 19, 30 to 39, 42 to 55, 58, 59, 62 to 77, 80 to 91, 94 to 127, 130 to 145, and 148 to 253 are "No function assigned."

Note 2: Function numbers are different from those on the VF-nC1. Pay attention to this when substituting function numbers.



# 12. Specifications

## 12.1 Models and their standard specifications

### ■ Standard specifications

| Item                    |                                  | Specification                              |       |       |       |                   |        |       |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|--|-------|-------|-------|-------------------|--------|-------|
| Input voltage class     |                                  | 3-phase 240V class                         |       |       |       |                   |        |       |
| Applicable motor (kW)   |                                  | 0.1  | 0.2   | 0.4   | 0.75  | 1.5               | 2.2    | 3.7   |
| Rating                  | Type                             | VFNC3                                      |       |       |       |                   |        |       |
|                         | Form                             | 2001P                                      | 2004P | 2005P | 2007P | 2015P             | 2022P  | 2037P |
|                         | Capacity (kVA) Note 1)           | 0.3  | 0.6   | 1.0   | 1.6   | 3.0               | 4.0    | 6.5   |
|                         | Rated output/current (A) Note 2) | 0.7  | 1.4   | 2.4   | 4.2   | 7.5               | 10.0   | 16.7  |
|                         | (0.7)                            | (1.4)                                      | (2.4) | (3.6) | (7.5) | (8.5)             | (14.0) |       |
| Output voltage Note 3)  |                                  | 3-phase 200V to 240V                       |       |       |       |                   |        |       |
| Overload current rating |                                  | 150%~60 seconds, 200%~0.5 second           |       |       |       |                   |        |       |
| Power supply            | Voltage-frequency                | 3-phase 200V to 240V - 50/60Hz             |       |       |       |                   |        |       |
|                         | Allowable fluctuation            | Voltage 170 to 264V Note 4), frequency ±5% |       |       |       |                   |        |       |
| Protective method       |                                  | IP20                                       |       |       |       |                   |        |       |
| Cooling method          |                                  | Self-cooling                               |       |       |       | Forced air-cooled |        |       |
| Color                   |                                  | RAL 3002 / 7016                            |       |       |       |                   |        |       |
| Built-in filter         |                                  | -  |       |       |       |                   |        |       |

| Item                         |                                  | Specification                             |       |       |                   |                    |  |        |                   |        |        |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|-------|-------|-------------------|--------------------|--|--------|-------------------|--------|--------|
| Input voltage class          |                                  | 1-phase 120V class                        |       |       |                   | 1-phase 240V class |  |        |                   |        |        |
| Applicable motor (kW)        |                                  | 0.1                                       | 0.2   | 0.4   | 0.75              | 0.1                | 0.2  | 0.4    | 0.75              | 1.5    | 2.2    |
| Rating                       | Type                             | VFNC3S                                    |       |       |                   |                    |  |        |                   |        |        |
|                              | Form                             | 1001P                                     | 1002P | 1004P | 1007P             | 2001PL             | 2002PL                                     | 2004PL | 2007PL            | 2015PL | 2022PL |
|                              | Capacity (kVA) Note 1)           | 0.3                                       | 0.6   | 1.0   | 1.6               | 0.3                | 0.6  | 1.0    | 1.6               | 3.0    | 4.0    |
|                              | Rated output current (A) Note 2) | 0.7                                       | 1.4   | 2.4   | 4.2               | 0.7                | 1.4  | 2.4    | 4.2               | 7.5    | 10.0   |
|                              | (0.7)                            | (1.4)                                     | (2.4) | (4.0) | (0.7)             | (1.4)              | (2.4)                                      | (3.2)  | (7.5)             | (9.1)  |        |
| Rated output voltage Note 3) |                                  | 3-phase 200V to 240V                      |       |       |                   |                    | 3-phase 200V to 240V                       |        |                   |        |        |
| Overload current rating      |                                  | 150%~60 seconds, 200%~0.5 second          |       |       |                   |                    | 150%~60 seconds, 200%~0.5 second           |        |                   |        |        |
| Power supply                 | Voltage-frequency                | 1-phase 100V to 120V - 50/60Hz            |       |       |                   |                    | 1-phase 200V to 240V - 50/60Hz             |        |                   |        |        |
|                              | Allowable fluctuation            | Voltage 85 to 132V Note 4), frequency ±5% |       |       |                   |                    | Voltage 170 to 264V Note 4), frequency ±5% |        |                   |        |        |
| Protective method            |                                  | IP20                                      |       |       |                   |                    | IP20                                       |        |                   |        |        |
| Cooling method               |                                  | Self-cooling                              |       |       | Forced air-cooled | Self-cooling       |  |        | Forced air-cooled |        |        |
| Color                        |                                  | RAL 3002 / 7016                           |       |       |                   |                    | RAL 3002 / 7016                            |        |                   |        |        |
| Built-in filter              |                                  | -   |       |       |                   |                    | EMI filter                                 |        |                   |        |        |

Note 1. Capacity is calculated at 220V for output voltage.

Note 2. Indicates rated output current setting when the PWM carrier frequency (parameter  $F_{300}$ ) is 4kHz or less. Between 5 kHz and 12 kHz, the rated output current is indicated in the ( ). Above 13 kHz, the output current must be reduced. (See 6.11 in E6581595.)

The default setting of the PWM carrier frequency is 12kHz.

Note 3. Maximum output voltage is the same as the input voltage.

In case of 1-phase 120V class, maximum output voltage is the two times of the input voltage.

Note 4. ±10% when the inverter is used continuously (load of 100%).

## ■ Common specification

|                             | Item  | Specification   |
|-----------------------------|---|---|
| Principal control functions | Control system  | Sinusoidal PWM control  |
|                             | Rated output voltage  | Adjustable within the range of 50 to 330V by correcting the supply voltage (However, cannot output voltage exceeding the input voltage.)  |
|                             | Output frequency range  | 0.1 to 400.0Hz, default setting: 0.5 to 80Hz, maximum frequency: 30 to 400Hz  |
|                             | Minimum setting steps of frequency  | 0.1Hz: analog input (when the max. frequency is 100Hz), 0.01Hz: Operation panel setting and communication setting.  |
|                             | Frequency accuracy  | Digital setting: within $\pm 0.1\%$ of the max. frequency (-10 to +60°C)<br>Analog setting: within $\pm 1.0\%$ of the max. frequency (25°C $\pm 10^\circ\text{C}$ )   |
|                             | Voltage/frequency characteristics   | V/f constant, variable torque, automatic torque boost, vector control, automatic energy-saving, Auto-tuning, Base frequency (20 - 400Hz) adjusting to 1 or 2, torque boost (0 - 30%) adjusting to 1 or 2, adjusting frequency at start (0.1 - 10Hz)                   |
|                             | Frequency setting signal  | Setting dial on the front panel, external frequency potentiometer (connectable to a potentiometer with a rated impedance of 1 - 10k $\Omega$ ), 0 - 10Vdc / 0 - 5Vdc (input impedance: VI=40k $\Omega$ ), 4 - 20mAac (input impedance: 250 $\Omega$ ).<br>Note 1      |
|                             | Terminal board base frequency   | The characteristic can be set arbitrarily by two-point setting. Possible to set: analog input (VI).   |
|                             | Frequency jump  | Setting of the jump frequency and the range.  |
|                             | Upper- and lower-limit frequencies  | Upper-limit frequency: 0 to max. frequency, lower-limit frequency: 0 to upper-limit frequency   |
|                             | PWM carrier frequency   | Adjustable range of 2 to 16Hz (default: 12kHz).   |
| PID control                 | Setting of proportional gain, integral gain, differential gain and control wait time. Checking whether the amount of processing amount and the amount of feedback agree.  |   |
| Operation specifications    | Acceleration/deceleration time  | Selectable from among acceleration/deceleration times 1 and 2 (0.0 to 3000 sec.). Automatic acceleration/deceleration function. S-pattern acceleration/deceleration 1 and 2. Control of forced rapid deceleration.  |
|                             | DC braking  | Braking start-up frequency: 0 to maximum frequency, braking rate: 0 to 100%, braking time: 0 to 20 seconds, emergency DC braking.   |
|                             | Dynamic Breaking Drive Circuit  | None (braking module is optional)   |
|                             | Input terminal function (programmable)  | Possible to select from among about 60 functions, such as forward/reverse run signal input, jog run signal input, operation base signal input and reset signal input, to assign to 5 input terminals. Logic selectable between sink and source.                       |
|                             | Output terminal functions (programmable)  | Possible to select from among about 40 functions, such as upper/lower limit frequency signal output, low speed detection signal output, specified speed reach signal output and failure signal output, to assign to FL relay output, open collector output terminals. |
|                             | Forward/reverse run   | The RUN and STOP keys on the operation panel are used to start and stop operation, respectively. Forward/reverse run possible through communication and contact inputs from the terminal block.   |
|                             | Jog run   | Jog mode, if selected, allows jog operation from the terminal board.  |
|                             | Preset speed operation  | Base frequency + 15-speed operation possible by changing the combination of 4 contacts on the terminal board.   |
|                             | Retry operation   | Capable of restarting automatically after a check of the main circuit elements in case the protective function is activated. 10 times (Max.) (selectable with a parameter)  |
|                             | Various prohibition settings / Password setting   | Possible to write-protect parameters and to prohibit the change of panel frequency settings and the use of operation panel for operation, emergency stop or resetting. Possible to write-protect parameters by setting 4 digits password.                             |
|                             | Regenerative power ride-through control   | Possible to keep the motor running using its regenerative energy in case of a momentary power failure (default: OFF).   |
| Auto-restart operation      | In the event of a momentary power failure, the inverter reads the rotational speed of the coasting motor and outputs a frequency appropriate to the rotational speed in order to restart the motor smoothly. This function can also be used when switching to commercial power. |   |
| Failure detection signal    | 1c-contact output: (250 V ac - 2 A (cos $\Phi$ =1): At resistive load, 30 V dc -1 A, 250 V ac - 1 A (cos $\Phi$ =0.4))  |   |

<Continued overleaf>

Note 1: Be careful, if 4-20 mA is selected, when the inverter's power is ON, the internal impedance is 250  $\Omega$ , but when the power is OFF, the internal impedance increases very much to approximately 40 k $\Omega$ .

&lt;Continued&gt;

|                     | Item                              | Specification  |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Protective function | Protective function               | Stall prevention, current limitation, over-current, output short circuit, over-voltage, over-voltage limitation, undervoltage, ground fault, detection, power supply phase failure, output phase failure, overload protection by electronic thermal function, armature over-current at start-up, load side over-current at start-up, over-torque, undercurrent, overheating, cumulative operation time, life alarm, emergency stop, braking resistor over-current/overload, various pre-alarms |
|                     | Electronic thermal characteristic | Switching between standard motor and constant-torque VF motor, switching between motors 1 and 2, setting of overload trip time, adjustment of stall prevention levels 1 and 2, selection of overload stall   |
|                     | Reset function                    | Function of resetting by closing contact 1a or by turning off power of the operation panel. This function is also used to save and clear trip records.   |
| Display function    | Alarms                            | Stall prevention, overvoltage, overload, under-voltage, setting error, retry in process, upper/lower limits  |
|                     | Causes of failures                | Over-current, overvoltage, overheat, short-circuit in load, ground fault, overload on inverter, over-current through arm at start-up, over-current through load at start-up, CPU fault, EEPROM fault, RAM fault, ROM fault, communication error. (Selectable: emergency stop, under-voltage, small current, over-torque, motor overload, input phase loss, output phase loss)  |
|                     | Monitoring function               | Operation frequency, operation frequency command, forward/reverse run, output current, input voltage, output voltage, torque, torque current, load factor of inverter, input power, output power, information on input terminals, information on output terminals, version of CPU1, version of CPU2, PID feedback value, frequency command (after compensation), causes of past trips 1 to 4, parts replacement alarm, cumulative operation time   |
|                     | Past trip monitoring function     | Stores data on the past four trips: number of trips that occurred in succession, operation frequency, direction of rotation, load current, input voltage, output voltage, information on input terminals, information on output terminals, and cumulative operation time when each trip occurred.  |
|                     | Output for frequency meter        | Analog output for motor: 1 mA dc full-scale dc ammeter<br>0 - 20 mA (4 to 20 mA) output: DC ammeter (allowable load resistance: Less than 750 Ω)<br>0 - 10 V output: DC voltmeter (allowable load resistance: Over 1 kΩ)<br>Resolution: Maximum of 1/255   |
|                     | 4-digit 7-segments LED            | Frequency: inverter output frequency.<br>Alarm: stall alarm "C", overvoltage alarm "P", overload alarm "L", overheat alarm "H".<br>Status: inverter status (frequency, cause of activation of protective function, input/output voltage, output current, etc.) and parameter settings.<br>Free-unit display: arbitrary unit (e.g. rotating speed) corresponding to output frequency.   |
|                     | Indicator                         | Lamps indicating the inverter status by lighting, such as RUN lamp, MON lamp, PRG lamp, % lamp, Hz lamp. The charge lamp indicates that the main circuit capacitors are electrically charged.  |
| Environments        | Location of use                   | Indoors: not exposed to direct sunlight, corrosive gas, explosive gas, flammable gas, oil mist, or dust; and vibration of less than 5.9 m/s <sup>2</sup> (10 to 55 Hz).  |
|                     | Elevation                         | 3000 m or less (current reduction required over 1000 m) Note 4)  |
|                     | Ambient temperature               | -10 to +60°C Note)1,2.   |
|                     | Storage temperature               | -25 to +70°C   |
|                     | Relative humidity                 | 5 to 95% (free from condensation and vapor).   |

Note 1. Above 40°C : Remove the protective seal from the top of VF-nC3.

If the ambient temperature is above 50°C: Remove the seal from the top of the inverter and use the inverter with the rated output current reduced.

Note 2. If inverters are installed side by side (with no sufficient space left between them): Remove the seal from the top of each inverter.

When installing the inverter where the ambient temperature will rise above 40°C, remove the seal from the top of the inverter and use the inverter with the rated output current reduced.

Note 3 For a side-by-side installation, remove the seal on top. However, in areas where the ambient temperature exceeds 40°C, remove the seal on top and reduce the rated output current. (See 6.11 in E6581595.)

Note 4 Current must be reduced by 1% for each 100 m over 1000 m. For example, 90% at 2000 m and 80% at 3000 m.

12

## 12.2 Outside dimensions and mass

### ■ Outside dimensions and mass

| Voltage class | Applicable motor (kW) | Inverter type | Dimensions (mm) |     |     |     |     |     | Drawing | Approx. weight (kg) |
|---------------|-----------------------|---------------|-----------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|---------------------|
|               |                       |               | W               | H   | D   | W1  | H1  | H2  |         |                     |
| 1-phase 100V  | 0.1                   | VFNC3S-1001P  | 72              | 130 | 102 | 60  | 131 | 13  | A       | 1.0                 |
|               | 0.2                   | VFNC3S-1002P  |                 |     |     |     |     |     |         |                     |
|               | 0.4                   | VFNC3S-1004P  | 121             |     |     |     |     |     |         |                     |
|               | 0.75                  | VFNC3S-1007P  | 105             |     | 156 | 93  | 118 | 12  | B       | 1.5                 |
| 1-phase 200V  | 0.1                   | VFNC3S-2001PL | 72              | 130 | 102 | 60  | 131 | 13  | A       | 1.0                 |
|               | 0.2                   | VFNC3S-2002PL |                 |     |     |     |     |     |         |                     |
|               | 0.4                   | VFNC3S-2004PL |                 |     |     |     |     |     |         |                     |
|               | 0.75                  | VFNC3S-2007PL | 105             |     | 156 | 93  | 118 | 12  | B       | 1.5                 |
|               | 1.5                   | VFNC3S-2015PL |                 |     |     |     |     |     |         |                     |
|               | 2.2                   | VFNC3S-2022PL |                 |     |     |     |     |     |         |                     |
| 3-phase 200V  | 0.1                   | VFNC3-2001P   | 72              | 130 | 102 | 60  | 131 | 13  | A       | 1.0                 |
|               | 0.2                   | VFNC3-2002P   |                 |     |     |     |     |     |         |                     |
|               | 0.4                   | VFNC3-2004P   |                 |     |     |     |     |     |         |                     |
|               | 0.75                  | VFNC3-2007P   | 105             |     | 131 | 93  | 118 |     |         |                     |
|               | 1.5                   | VFNC3-2015P   |                 |     |     |     |     |     |         |                     |
|               | 2.2                   | VFNC3-2022P   |                 |     |     |     |     |     |         |                     |
|               | 4.0                   | VFNC3-2037P   | 140             |     | 170 | 141 | 126 | 157 | D       | 2.0                 |

### ■ Outline drawing

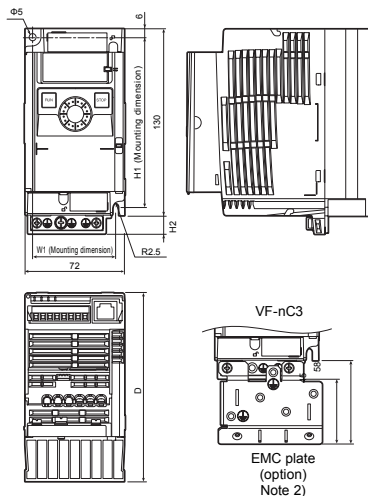


Fig.A

Note 1. To make it easier to grasp the dimensions of each inverter, dimensions common to all inverters in these figures are shown with numeric values but not with symbols.

Here are the meanings of the symbols used.

W: Width

H: Height

D: Depth

W1: Mounting dimension (horizontal)

H1: Mounting dimension (vertical)

H2: Height of EMC plate mounting area

Note 2. Here are the available EMC plate

Fig.A : EMP007Z (Approx. weight : 0.3kg)

Fig.B, C : EMP008Z (Approx. weight : 0.4kg)

Fig.D : EMP009Z (Approx. weight : 0.5kg)

Note 3. The models shown in Fig. A to Fig. C are fixed at two points: in the upper left and lower right corners.

Note 4. The model shown in Fig. A is not equipped with a cooling fan.

Note 5. Height measurements do not include the protuberance for installation.

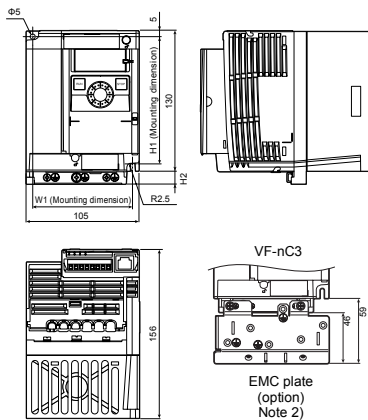


Fig.B

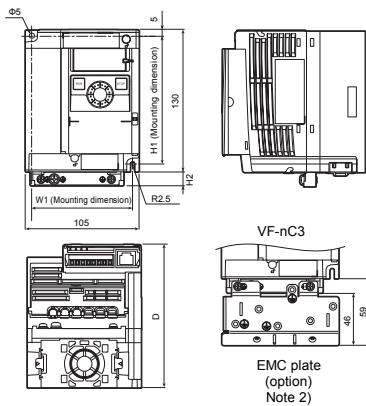


Fig.C

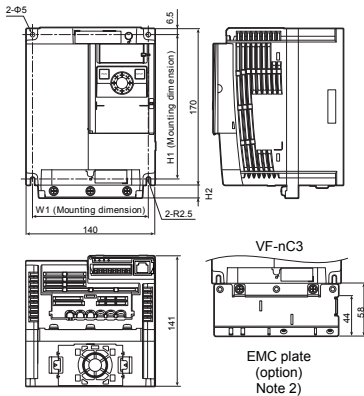


Fig.D

# 13. Before making a service call

## - Trip information and remedies

### 13.1 Trip causes/warnings and remedies

When a problem arises, diagnose it in accordance with the following table.

If it is found that replacement of parts is required or the problem cannot be solved by any remedy described in the table, contact your Toshiba dealer.

| [Trip information] |              |   |  |   |
|--------------------|--------------|---|--|---|
| Error code         | Failure code | Problem   | Possible causes  | Remedies  |
| <i>OL1</i>         | 0001         | Overcurrent during acceleration                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The acceleration time <i>RLC</i> is too short.</li> <li>The V/F setting is improper.</li> <li>A restart signal is input to the rotating motor after a momentary stop, etc.</li> <li>A special motor (e.g. motor with a small impedance) is used.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase the acceleration time <i>RLC</i>.</li> <li>Check the V/F parameter.</li> <li>Use <i>F301</i> (auto-restart) and <i>F302</i> (ride-through control).</li> <li>Adjust the carrier frequency <i>F300</i>.</li> <li>Set the carrier frequency control mode selection parameter <i>F315</i> to 1 (carrier frequency decreased automatically).</li> </ul> |
| <i>OL2</i>         | 0002         | Overcurrent during deceleration                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The deceleration time <i>dEL</i> is too short.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase the deceleration time <i>dEL</i>.</li> <li>Set the carrier frequency control mode selection parameter <i>F315</i> to 1 (carrier frequency decreased automatically).</li> </ul>  |
| <i>OL3</i>         | 0003         | Overcurrent during constant speed operation               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The load fluctuates abruptly.</li> <li>The load is in an abnormal condition.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reduce the load fluctuation.</li> <li>Check the load (operated machine).</li> <li>Set the carrier frequency control mode selection parameter <i>F315</i> to 1 (carrier frequency decreased automatically).</li> </ul>  |
| <i>OLL</i>         | 0004         | Overcurrent (An overcurrent on the load side at start-up) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The insulation of the output main circuit or motor is defective.</li> <li>The motor has too small impedance.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the cables and wires for defective insulation.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>OLR</i>         | 0005         | Arm overcurrent at start-up                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A main circuit elements is defective.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make a service call.</li> </ul>  |
| *<br><i>EPH1</i>   | 0008         | Input phase failure                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A phase failure occurred in the input line of the main circuit.</li> <li>The capacitor in the main circuit lacks capacitance.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the main circuit input line for phase failure.</li> <li>Enable <i>F508</i> (input phase failure detection).</li> <li>Check the capacitor in the main circuit for exhaustion.</li> </ul>  |
| *<br><i>EPH0</i>   | 0009         | Output phase failure                                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A phase failure occurred in the output line of the main circuit.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the main circuit output line, motor, etc. for phase failure.</li> <li>Enable <i>F505</i> (Output phase failure detection).</li> </ul>  |

\* You can select a trip ON/OFF by parameters.  
(Continued overleaf)

(Continued)

| Error code     | Failure code | Problem                                     | Possible causes  | Remedies   |
|----------------|--------------|---|--|--|
| <i>OP1</i>     | 000A         | Overvoltage during acceleration             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The input voltage fluctuates abnormally.</li> <li>(1) The power supply has a capacity of 200kVA or more.</li> <li>(2) A power factor improvement capacitor is opened or closed.</li> <li>(3) A system using a thyristor is connected to the same power distribution line.</li> <li>A restart signal is input to the rotating motor after a momentary stop, etc.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Insert a suitable input reactor.</li> <li>Use <i>F301</i> (auto-restart) and <i>F302</i> (ride-through control).</li> </ul>   |
| <i>OP2</i>     | 000B         | Overvoltage during deceleration             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The deceleration time <math>\alpha E C</math> is too short. (Regenerative energy is too large.)</li> <li>The input voltage fluctuates abnormally.</li> <li>(1) The power supply has a capacity of 200kVA or more.</li> <li>(2) A power factor improvement capacitor is opened and closed.</li> <li>(3) A system using a thyristor is connected to the same power distribution line.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase the deceleration time <math>\alpha E C</math>.</li> <li>Enable <i>F305</i> (overvoltage limit operation).</li> <li>Insert a suitable input reactor.</li> </ul>   |
| <i>OP3</i>     | 000C         | Overvoltage during constant-speed operation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The input voltage fluctuates abnormally.</li> <li>(1) The power supply has a capacity of 200kVA or more.</li> <li>(2) A power factor improvement capacitor is opened or closed.</li> <li>(3) A system using a thyristor is connected to the same power distribution line.</li> <li>The motor is in a regenerative state because the load causes the motor to run at a frequency higher than the inverter output frequency.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Insert a suitable input reactor.</li> <li>Install an optional brake module.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>OL1</i>     | 000D         | Inverter overload                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The acceleration time ACC is too short.</li> <li>The DC braking amount is too large.</li> <li>The V/F setting is improper.</li> <li>A restart signal is input to the rotating motor after a momentary stop, etc.</li> <li>The load is too large.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increase the acceleration time <math>A C C</math>.</li> <li>Reduce the DC braking amount <i>F251</i> and the DC braking time <i>F252</i>.</li> <li>Check the V/F parameter setting.</li> <li>Use <i>F301</i> (auto-restart) and <i>F302</i> (ride-through control).</li> <li>Use an inverter with a larger rating.</li> </ul>     |
| <i>OL2</i>     | 000E         | Motor overload                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The V/F setting is improper.</li> <li>The motor is locked up.</li> <li>Low-speed operation is performed continuously.</li> <li>An excessive load is applied to the motor during operation.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the V/F parameter setting.</li> <li>Check the load (operated machine).</li> <li>Adjust <i>OL1</i> to the overload that the motor can withstand during operation in a low speed range.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>OL3</i>     | 003E         | Main module overload                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The carrier frequency is high and load current has increased at low speeds (mainly at 15Hz or less).</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Raise the operation frequency.</li> <li>Reduce the load.</li> <li>Reduce the carrier frequency.</li> <li>When an operating motor is started up at 0Hz, use the auto-restart function.</li> </ul>  |
| *<br><i>Ot</i> | 0020         | Over-torque trip                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Over-torque reaches to a detection level during operation.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enable <i>F615</i> (over-torque trip selection).</li> <li>Check system error.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>OH</i>      | 0010         | Overheat                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The cooling fan does not rotate.</li> <li>The ambient temperature is too high.</li> <li>The vent is blocked up.</li> <li>A heat generating device is installed close to the inverter.</li> <li>The thermistor in the unit is broken.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Restart the operation by resetting the inverter after it has cooled down enough.</li> <li>The fan requires replacement if it does not rotate during operation.</li> <li>Secure sufficient space around the inverter.</li> <li>Do not place any heat generating device near the inverter.</li> <li>Make a service call.</li> </ul> |

\* You can select a trip ON/OFF by parameters.

(Continued overleaf)

(Continued)

| Error code       | Failure code | Problem                          | Possible causes   | Remedies  |
|------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|---|---|
| <i>E</i>         | 0011         | Emergency stop                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During automatic operation or remote operation, a stop command is entered from the operation panel or a remote input device.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reset the inverter.</li> </ul>   |
| <i>EEP1</i>      | 0012         | EEPROM fault 1                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A data writing error occurs.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn off the inverter, then turn it again. If it does not recover from the error, make a service call.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>EEP2</i>      | 0013         | EEPROM fault 2                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Power supply is cut off during <i>LYP</i> operation and data writing is aborted.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the power off temporarily and turn it back on, and then try <i>LYP</i> operation again.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>EEP3</i>      | 0014         | EEPROM fault 3                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A data reading error occurred.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn off the inverter, then turn it again. If it does not recover from the error, make a service call.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>Err2</i>      | 0015         | Main unit RAM fault              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The control RAM is defective.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make a service call.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>Err3</i>      | 0016         | Main unit ROM fault              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The control ROM is defective.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make a service call.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>Err4</i>      | 0017         | CPU fault 1                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The control CPU is defective.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make a service call.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>Err5</i>      | 0018         | Remote control error             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An error arises during remote operation.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the remote control device, cables, etc.</li> </ul>   |
| <i>Err7</i>      | 001A         | Current detector fault           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The current detector is defective.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make a service call.</li> </ul>  |
| *<br><i>UL</i>   | 001D         | Low-current operation Trip       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The output current decreased to a low-current detection level during operation.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enable <i>F510</i> (low-current detection).</li> <li>Check the suitable detection level for the system (<i>F609</i>, <i>F611</i>, <i>F612</i>).</li> <li>Make a service call if the setting is correct.</li> </ul>                   |
| *<br><i>UP1</i>  | 001E         | Undervoltage trip (main circuit) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The input voltage (in the main circuit) is too low.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the input voltage.</li> <li>Enable <i>F627</i> (undervoltage trip selection).</li> <li>To cope with a momentary stop due to undervoltage, enable <i>F302</i> (ride-through control) and <i>F301</i> (auto-restart).</li> </ul> |
| <i>EF2</i>       | 0022         | Ground fault trip                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A ground fault occurs in the output cable or the motor.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the cable and the motor for ground faults.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>Etn1</i>      | 0054         | Auto-tuning error                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the motor parameters <i>F401</i>, <i>F402</i>, <i>F405</i>, <i>F415</i>, <i>F416</i>, <i>F417</i>, and <i>F459</i>.</li> <li>The motor with the capacity of 2 classes or less than the inverter is used.</li> <li>The output cable is too thin.</li> <li>The motor is rotating.</li> <li>The inverter is used for loads other than those of three-phase induction motors.</li> </ul> |   |
| <i>EtYP</i>      | 0029         | Inverter type error              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Circuit board is changed. (Or main circuit/drive circuit board)</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make a service call.</li> </ul>  |
| *<br><i>E-18</i> | 0032         | Brea in analog signal cable      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The input signal from VI is equal to or less than the <i>F633</i> setting.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the VI signal cable for breaks. Also, check the input signal value or setting of <i>F633</i>.</li> </ul>   |
| <i>E-19</i>      | 0033         | CPU communications error         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A communications error occurs between control CPUs.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make a service call.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>E-20</i>      | 0034         | Excessive torque boosted         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The automatic torque boost parameter <i>F402</i> setting is too high.</li> <li>The motor has too small impedance.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set a lower automatic torque boost parameter <i>F402</i> setting.</li> </ul>   |
| <i>E-21</i>      | 0035         | CPU fault 2                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The control CPU is defective.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make a service call.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>E-26</i>      | 003A         | CPU fault 3                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The control CPU is defective.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make a service call.</li> </ul>  |

\* You can select a trip ON/OFF by parameters.



[Alarm information] Each message in the table is displayed to give a warning but does not cause the inverter to trip.

| Error code     | Problem  | Possible causes  | Remedies   |
|----------------|--|--|--|
| OFF            | ST terminal OFF  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The ST-CC circuit is opened.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Close the ST-CC circuit.</li> </ul>   |
| ROFF           | Undervoltage in main circuit   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The supply voltage between R, S and T is under voltage.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Measure the main circuit supply voltage. If the voltage is at a normal level, the inverter requires repairing.</li> </ul>   |
| rtRY           | Retry in process   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The inverter is in the process of retry.</li> <li>A momentary stop occurred.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The inverter is normal if it restarts after several tens of seconds. The inverter restarts automatically. Be careful of the machine because it may suddenly restart.</li> </ul> |
| Err 1          | Frequency point setting error alarm  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The frequency setting signals at points 1 and 2 are set too close to each other.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the frequency setting signals at points 1 and 2 apart from each other.</li> </ul>   |
| CLR            | Clear command acceptable   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message is displayed when pressing the STOP key while an error code is displayed.</li> </ul>                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the STOP key again to clear the trip.</li> </ul>  |
| EOFF           | Emergency stop command acceptable  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The operation panel is used to stop the operation in automatic control or remote control mode.</li> </ul>                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the STOP key for an emergency stop. To cancel the emergency stop, press any other key.</li> </ul>   |
| H/L<br>LO      | Setting error alarm / An error code and data are displayed alternately twice each. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An error is found in a setting when data is reading or writing.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check whether the setting is made correctly.</li> </ul>   |
| HEAd<br>End    | Display of first/last data items   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The first and last data item in the <i>RUH</i> data group is displayed.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press MODE key to exit the data group.</li> </ul>   |
| db             | DC braking   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DC braking in process</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The message goes off in several tens of seconds if no problem occurs. Note)</li> </ul>  |
| E1<br>E2<br>E3 | Flowing out of excess number of digits   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The number of digits such as frequencies is more than 4. (The upper digits have a priority.)</li> </ul>                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower the frequency free unit magnification <i>F7D2</i>.</li> </ul>   |
| STOP           | Momentary power failure slowdown stop prohibition function activated.              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The slowdown stop prohibition function set with <i>F3D2</i> (momentary power failure ride-through operation) is activated.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To restart operation, reset the inverter or input an operation signal again.</li> </ul>   |
| LSLP           | Auto-stop because of continuous operation at the lower-limit frequency             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The automatic stop function selected with <i>F255</i> was activated.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To deactivate the automatic stop function, increase the frequency command above the lower-limit frequency (LL) + 0.2 Hz or turn off the operation command.</li> </ul>           |
| init           | Parameters in the process of initialization  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Parameters are being initialized to default values.</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Normal if the message disappears after a while (several seconds to several tens of seconds).</li> </ul>   |
| A-05           | Output frequency upper limit   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An attempt was made to operate at a frequency higher than 10 times the base frequency (<i>UL</i> or <i>F17D</i>).</li> </ul>          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operate at a frequency within 10 times the base frequency.</li> </ul>   |
| A-17           | Operation panel key fault  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The RUN or STOP key is held down for more than 20 seconds.</li> <li>The RUN or STOP key is faulty.</li> </ul>                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the operation panel.</li> </ul>   |
| Autn           | Auto-tuning  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auto-tuning in process</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Normal if it the message disappears after a few seconds.</li> </ul>   |
| E-50           | Source logic switching check alarm   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The input terminal was switched to source logic.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the wiring, and set the appropriate logic.</li> </ul>   |
| E-51           | Sink logic switching check alarm   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The input terminal was switched to sink logic.</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check to make sure that the wiring is normal, and reset or turn the power off and then back on again. This switches the logic.</li> </ul>                                       |

Note) When the ON/OFF function is selected for DC braking (DB), using the input terminal selection parameter, you can judge the inverter to be normal if "db" disappears when opening the circuit between the terminal and CC.

[Prealarm display]

|               |                   |  |
|---------------|-------------------|--|
| $\mathcal{L}$ | Overcurrent alarm | Same as $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{L}$ (overcurrent)                               |
| $\mathcal{P}$ | Overvoltage alarm | Same as $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{P}$ (overvoltage)                               |
| $\mathcal{L}$ | Overload alarm    | Same as $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{L} 1$ and $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{L} 2$ (overload) |
| $\mathcal{H}$ | Overheat alarm    | Same as $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{H}$ (overheat)                                  |

If two or more problems arise simultaneously, one of the following alarms appears and blinks.

$\mathcal{L}\mathcal{P}$ ,  $\mathcal{P}\mathcal{L}$ ,  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{P}\mathcal{L}$

The blinking alarms  $\mathcal{L}$ ,  $\mathcal{P}$ ,  $\mathcal{L}$ ,  $\mathcal{H}$  are displayed in this order from left to right.

## 13.2 Restoring the inverter from a trip

Do not reset the inverter when tripped because of a failure or error before eliminating the cause. Resetting the tripped inverter before eliminating the problem causes it to trip again.

The inverter can be restored from a trip by any of the following operations:

- (1) By turning off the power (Keep the inverter off until the LED turns off.)  
Note) See inverter trip hold selection  $F 6 \mathcal{O}\mathcal{L}$  for details.
- (2) By means of an external signal (Short circuit across RES and CC on control terminal block → Open): The reset function must be assigned to the input terminal block.
- (3) By panel keypad operation
- (4) By inputting a trip clear signal from communication  
(Refer to communication manual for details.)

To reset the inverter by panel keypad operation, follow these steps.

1. Press the STOP key and make sure that  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{L} r$  is displayed.
2. Pressing the STOP key again will reset the inverter if the cause of the trip has already been eliminated.

- ★ When any overload function [ $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{L} 1$ : inverter overload,  $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{L} 2$ : motor overload] is active, the inverter cannot be reset by inputting a reset signal from an external device or by operation panel operation before the virtual cooling time has passed.

Virtual cooling time ...  $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{L} 1$ : about 30 seconds after the occurrence of a trip

$\mathcal{O}\mathcal{L} 2$ : about 120 seconds after a occurrence of a trip

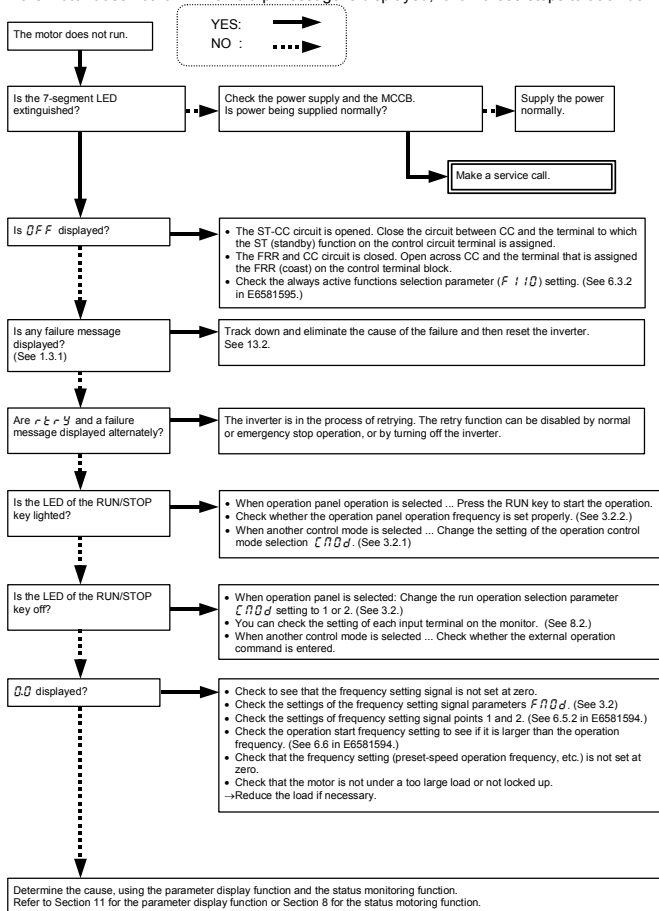
- ★ In case of a trip due to overheat ( $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{H}$ ), the inverter checks the temperature within. Wait until the temperature in the inverter falls sufficiently before resetting the inverter.
- ★ The inverter cannot be reset while the emergency stop signal is being input from the terminal.

[Caution]

Turning the inverter off then turning it on again resets the inverter immediately. You can use this mode of resetting if there is a need to reset the inverter immediately. Note, however, that this operation may damage the system or the motor if it is repeated frequently.

## 13.3 If the motor does not run while no trip message is displayed ...

If the motor does not run while no trip message is displayed, follow these steps to track down the cause.



## 13.4 How to determine the causes of other problems



The following table provides a listing of other problems, their possible causes and remedies.

| Problems  | Causes and remedies  |
|---|--|
| The motor runs in the wrong direction.                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Invert the phases of the output terminals U, V and W.</li> <li>• Invert the forward/reverse run-signal terminals of the external input device. (See 7.2.1 "Assignment of functions to control terminals".)</li> <li>• Change the setting of the parameter <math>F_{r}</math> in the case of panel operation.</li> </ul>   |
| The motor runs but its speed does not change normally.            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The load is too heavy. Reduce the load.</li> <li>• The soft stall function is activated. Disable the soft stall function. (See 5.13.)</li> <li>• The maximum frequency <math>F_H</math> and the upper limit frequency <math>U_L</math> are set too low. Increase the maximum frequency <math>F_H</math> and the upper limit frequency <math>U_L</math>.</li> <li>• The frequency setting signal is too low. Check the signal set value, circuit, cables, etc.</li> <li>• Check the setting characteristics (point 1 and point 2 settings) of the frequency setting signal parameters. (See 6.5.1 in E6581595.)</li> <li>• If the motor runs at a low speed, check to see that the stall prevention function is activated because the torque boost amount is too large. Adjust the torque boost amount (<math>\mu b</math>) and the acceleration time (<math>R_L</math>). (See 5.12 and 5.3.)</li> </ul> |
| The motor does not accelerate or decelerate smoothly.             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The acceleration time (<math>R_L</math>) or the deceleration time (<math>dE_L</math>) is set too short. Increase the acceleration time (<math>R_L</math>) or the deceleration time (<math>dE_L</math>).</li> </ul>  |
| A too large current flows into the motor.                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The load is too heavy. Reduce the load.</li> <li>• If the motor runs at a low speed, check whether the torque boost amount is too large. (See 5.12.)</li> </ul>   |
| The motor runs at a higher or lower speed than the specified one. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The motor has an improper voltage rating. Use a motor with a proper voltage rating.</li> <li>• The motor terminal voltage is too low. Check the setting of the base frequency voltage parameter (<math>\mu L \mu</math>). (See 5.10.) Replace the cable with a cable larger in diameter.</li> <li>• The reduction gear ratio, etc., are not set properly. Adjust the reduction gear ratio, etc.</li> <li>• The output frequency is not set correctly. Check the output frequency range.</li> <li>• Adjust the base frequency. (See 5.10.)</li> </ul>  |
| The motor speed fluctuates during operation.                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The load is too heavy or too light. Reduce the load fluctuation.</li> <li>• The inverter or motor used does not have a rating large enough to drive the load. Use an inverter or motor with a rating large enough.</li> <li>• Check whether the frequency setting signal changes.</li> <li>• If the V/F control selection parameter <math>P_L</math> is set at 3, check the vector control setting, operation conditions, etc. (See 5.11.)</li> </ul>   |
| Parameter settings cannot be changed.                             | <p>Change the setting of the parameter setting selection prohibited parameter <math>F_{PQ}</math> to <math>\bar{0}</math> (enabled) if it is set to <math>i</math> or <math>\bar{2}</math> (prohibited).</p> <p>* For reasons of safety, some parameters cannot be reprogrammed while the inverter is running. (See 6.18.1 in E6581595.)</p>   |

### How to cope with parameter setting-related problems

|   |  |
|---|--|
| If you forget parameters which have been reset                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can search for all reset parameters and change their settings.<br/>* Refer to 4.3.1 for details.</li> </ul>             |
| If you want to return all reset parameters to their respective default settings | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can return all parameters which have been reset to their default settings.<br/>* Refer to 4.3.2 for details.</li> </ul> |

## 14. Inspection and maintenance

|  Warning        |   |
|--|---|
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The equipment must be inspected every day.<br/>If the equipment is not inspected and maintained, errors and malfunctions may not be discovered which could lead to accidents.</li> <li>• Before inspection, perform the following steps.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Shut off all input power to the inverter.</li> <li>(2) Wait at least 15 minutes and check to make sure that the charge lamp is no longer lit.</li> <li>(3) Use a tester that can measure DC voltages (400V DC or more), and check that the voltage to the DC main circuits (across PA-PC) does not exceed 45V.</li> </ol> </li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">Performing an inspection without carrying out these steps first could lead to electric shock.</p> |

Be sure to inspect the inverter regularly and periodically to prevent it from breaking down because of the environment of use, such as temperature, humidity, dust and vibration, or deterioration of its components with aging.

### 14.1 Regular inspection

Since electronic parts are susceptible to heat, install the inverter in a cool, well-ventilated and dust-free place. This is essential for increasing the service life.

The purpose of regular inspections is to maintain the correct environment of use and to find any sign of failure or malfunction by comparing current operation data with past operation records.

| Subject of inspection           | Inspection procedure             |                  |   | Criteria for judgement   |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------|---|--|
|                                 | Inspection item                  | Inspection cycle | Inspection method   |  |
| 1. Indoor environment           | 1) Dust, temperature and gas     | Occasionally     | 1) Visual check, check by means of a thermometer, smell check | 1) Improve the environment if it is found to be unfavorable.<br>2) Check for any trace of water condensation.<br>3) Max. temperature: 60°C                         |
|                                 | 2) Drop of water or other liquid | Occasionally     | 2) Visual check   |  |
|                                 | 3) Room temperature              | Occasionally     | 3) Check by means of a thermometer                            |  |
| 2. Units and components         | 1) Vibration and noise           | Occasionally     | Tactile check of the cabinet                                  | Is something unusual is found, open the door and check the transformer, reactors, contactors, relays, cooling fan, etc., inside. If necessary, stop the operation. |
| 3. Operation data (output side) | 1) Load current                  | Occasionally     | Moving-iron type AC ammeter                                   | To be within the rated current, voltage and temperature.<br>No significant difference from data collected in a normal state.                                       |
|                                 | 2) Voltage (*)                   | Occasionally     | Rectifier type AC voltmeter                                   |  |
|                                 | 3) Temperature                   | Occasionally     | Thermometer   |  |




\*) The voltage measured may slightly vary from voltmeter to voltmeter. When measuring the voltage, always take readings from the same circuit tester or voltmeter.

## ■ Check points

1. Something unusual in the installation environment
2. Something unusual in the cooling system
3. Unusual vibration or noise
4. Overheating or discoloration
5. Unusual odor
6. Unusual motor vibration, noise or overheating
7. Adhesion or accumulation of foreign substances (conductive substances)

## 14.2 Periodical inspection

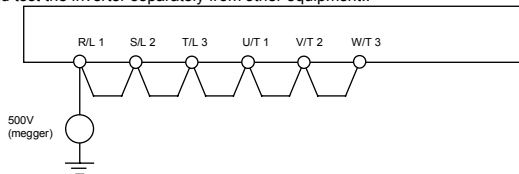
Make a periodical inspection at intervals of 3 or 6 months depending on the operating conditions.

|  <b>Warning</b> |   |
|--|---|
| <br>Instruction | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Before inspection, perform the following steps.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Shut off all input power to the inverter.</li> <li>(2) Wait at least 15 minutes and check to make sure that the charge lamp is no longer lit.</li> <li>(3) Use a tester that can measure DC voltages (400V DC or more), and check that the voltage to the DC main circuits (across PA-PC) does not exceed 45V.</li> </ol>               Performing an inspection without carrying out these steps first could lead to electric shock.             </li> </ul> |
| <br>Prohibited  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Never replace any part.<br/>This could be a cause of electric shock, fire and bodily injury. To replace parts, call the local sales agency.</li> </ul>   |

## ■ Check items

1. Check to see if all screwed terminals are tightened firmly. If any screw is found loose, tighten it again with a screwdriver.
2. Check to see if all caulked terminals are fixed properly. Check them visually to see that there is no trace of overheating around any of them.
3. Check all cables and wires for damage. Check them visually.
4. Remove dirt and dust. With a vacuum cleaner, remove dirt and dust. When cleaning, clean the vents and the printed circuit boards. Always keep them clean to prevent an accident due to dirt or dust.
5. If no power is supplied to the inverter for a long time, the performance of its large-capacity electrolytic capacitor declines.  
When leaving the inverter unused for a long time, supply it with electricity once every two years, for 5 hours or more each, to recover the performance of the large-capacity electrolytic capacitor. And also check the function of the inverter. It is advisable not to supply the commercial power directly to the inverter but to gradually increase the power supply voltage with a transformer, etc.
6. If the need arises, conduct an insulation test on the main circuit terminal board only, using a 500V insulation tester. Never conduct an insulation test on control terminals other than terminals on the printed circuit board or on control terminals. When testing the motor for insulation performance, separate it from the inverter in advance by disconnecting the cables from the inverter output terminals U, V and W. When conducting an insulation test on peripheral circuits other than the motor circuit, disconnect all cables from the inverter so that no voltage is applied to the inverter during the test.

(Note) Before an insulation test, always disconnect all cables from the main circuit terminal board and test the inverter separately from other equipment..



7. Never test the inverter for pressure. A pressure test may cause damage to its components.
8. Voltage and temperature check

Recommended voltmeter : Input side ... Moving-iron type voltmeter (↻)

Output side ... Rectifier type voltmeter (▶)

It will be very helpful for detecting a defect if you always measure and record the ambient temperature before, during and after the operation.

## ■ Replacement of expendable parts

The inverter is composed of a large number of electronic parts including semiconductor devices. The following parts deteriorate with the passage of time because of their composition or physical properties. The use of aged or deteriorated parts leads to degradation in the performance or a breakdown of the inverter. To avoid such trouble, the inverter should be checked periodically.

(Note) Generally, the life of a part depends on the ambient temperature and the conditions of use. The life spans listed below are applicable to parts when used under normal environmental conditions.

### 1) Cooling fan

The fan for cooling heat-generating parts has a service life of about ten years. The fan also needs to be replaced if it makes a noise or vibrates abnormally.

### 2) Smoothing capacitor

The smoothing aluminum electrolytic capacitor in the main circuit DC section degrades in performance because of ripple currents, etc. It becomes necessary to replace the capacitor after it is used for about 5 years under normal conditions. Since the smoothing capacitor is mounted on a printed circuit board, it must be replaced together with the circuit board.

<Criteria for appearance check>

- Absence of liquid leak
- Safety valve in the depressed position
- Measurement of electrostatic capacitance and insulation resistance

Note: Checking the life alarm function is useful for roughly determining the parts replacement time. To ensure customer safety, you should never replace parts on your own. (It is also possible to monitor the part replacement alarm and output a signal.)

## ■ Standard replacement cycles of principal parts

As guides, the table below lists part replacement cycles that were estimated based on the assumption that the inverter would be used in a normal use environment under normal conditions (ambient temperature, ventilation conditions, and energizing time). The replacement cycle of each part does not mean its service life but the number of years over which its failure rate does not increase significantly.

Also, make use of the life alarm function.

| Part name  | Standard replacement cycle Note 1: | Replacement mode and others  |
|--|------------------------------------|--|
| Cooling fan  | 10 years                           | Replacement with a new one (To be determined after inspection)       |
| Main circuit smoothing aluminum electrolytic capacitor             | 10 years Note 2                    | Replacement with a new one (To be determined after inspection)       |
| Relays   | -                                  | Whether to replace or not depends on the check results               |
| Aluminum electrolytic capacitor mounted on a printed circuit board | 10 years Note 2                    | Replace with a new circuit board (To be determined after inspection) |

Note 1: The replacement cycle is calculated on the assumption that the average ambient temperature over a year is 40°C. The environment must be free of corrosive gases, oil mist and dust.

Note 2: Figures are for when the inverter output current is 80% of the rated current of the inverter.

Note 3: The life of parts varies greatly depending on the operating environment.

## 14.3 Making a call for servicing

For the Toshiba service network, refer to the back cover of this instruction manual. If defective conditions are encountered, please contact the Toshiba service section in charge via your Toshiba dealer.

When making a call for servicing, please inform us of the contents of the rating label on the right panel of the inverter, the presence or absence of optional devices, etc., in addition to the details of the failure.

## 14.4 Keeping the inverter in storage

Take the following precautions when keeping the inverter in storage temporarily or for a long period of time.

1. Store the inverter in a well-ventilated place away from heat, damp, dust and metal powder.
2. If no power is supplied to the inverter for a long time, the performance of its large-capacity electrolytic capacitor declines.

When leaving the inverter unused for a long time, supply it with electricity once every two years, for 5 hours or more each, to recover the performance of the large-capacity electrolytic capacitor. And also check the function of the inverter. It is advisable not to supply the commercial power directly to the inverter but to gradually increase the power supply voltage with a transformer, etc.



## 15. Warranty

Any part of the inverter that proves defective will be repaired and adjusted free of charge under the following conditions:

1. This warranty applies only to the inverter main unit.
2. Any part of the inverter which fails or is damaged under normal use within twelve months from the date of delivery shall be repaired free of charge.
3. For the following kinds of failure or damage, the repair cost shall be borne by the customer even within the warranty period.
  - Failure or damage caused by improper or incorrect use or handling, or unauthorized repair or modification of the inverter
  - Failure or damage caused by the inverter falling or an accident during transportation after the purchase
  - Failure or damage caused by fire, salty water or wind, corrosive gas, earthquake, storm or flood, lightning, abnormal voltage supply, or other natural disasters
  - Failure or damage caused by the use of the inverter for any purpose or application other than the intended one
4. All expenses incurred by Toshiba for on-site services shall be charged to the customer, unless a service contract is signed beforehand between the customer and Toshiba, in which case the service contract has priority over this warranty.

## 16. Disposal of the inverter



### Caution



#### Instruction

- If you throw away the inverter, have it done by a specialist in industry waste disposal(\*). If you throw away the inverter by yourself, this can result in explosion of capacitor or produce noxious gases, resulting in injury.  
(\* ) Persons who specialize in the processing of waste and known as "industrial waste product collectors and transporters" or "industrial waste disposal persons." If the collection, transport and disposal of industrial waste is done by someone who is not licensed for that job, it is a punishable violation of the law. (Laws in regard to cleaning and processing of waste materials)

For safety's sake, do not dispose of the disused inverter yourself but ask an industrial waste disposal agent. Disposing of the inverter improperly could cause its capacitor to explode and emit toxic gas, causing injury to persons.